

Final Fantasy IX Game Script

by OKong

Updated on Dec 31, 2006

FINAL FANTASY IX Game Script

Written by Oliver Kong

E-mail address: oliverkongsq@hotmail.com

Table of Contents

1. Updates
 2. Disclaimer
 3. Game Script
 4. Credits
-

1. Updates

10/23/02:

Changed the disclaimer a little due to the fact that I may receive complaints from some people and added the table of contents. Also, I bundle all of the game scripts from the start of each 4 discs together so that you can download it all without consuming time downloading one section at a time.

2/26/03: Changed the last narrator's line a little before the end of the script due to the fact that I want to give it more specific details about what happened at the ending movie.

2/27/03:

Grammar adjustments on the last narrator's line made.

7/23/03:

Some typos corrected and added an important notice to the disclaimer.

4/5/04:

Removed character description to not give away too much info about them.

1/26/05:

Changed my e-mail address due to contribution issues.

12/23/06:

Added the missing epilogue dialogue I have strived to finish in over a year after various things I have to do that got in my way.

2. Disclaimer

This is one of my longest game transcripts I have ever transcribed. Make sure you do not use a A: floppy disk to download this lengthy game script or it could damage the game script file. Your best bet is to use a USB Flash Pen to save this game script to have more space on a portable backup device. Enjoy my script. Oh, one more thing. If you are thinking of posting my game script for your website, please ask me first before you do so.

3. Game Script

[We begin this game by watching a movie with the view of the ship and Princess Garnet. The camera shows a boy with a tail, who goes inside the dark room. In there...]

Boy with a Tail: Sure is dark... Guess nobody's here yet...

[The boy with a tail lights the candle. After that...]

Unknown Voice: Who's there!?

Boy: It's me, Zidane!

[The boy with a tail will be known as Zidane from this point on. Cinna, Blank, and Marcus came out and appeared at the scene.]

Blank: Hey, Zidane! You sure are late!

Zidane: Sorry. So, where's the boss?

Cinna: Ain't here yet.

[Suddenly the boss with a dragon mask came out at the scene. Zidane's group fights the unknown boss. After Zidane's group defeats the unknown boss...]

Baku: UGHUUA! Oh, my head! Go easy, you guys!

[The unknown boss turned out to be Baku all along. Later...]

Zidane, Cinna, Blank & Marcus: Whew...

Baku: Hey, fools! You're lookin' a lot better! Gwahahaha! Alright! Let's start this meeting already!

[Later, inside the meeting room...]

Baku: Here's the plan! Tantalus, the infamous band of daring thieves (that's us), is headin' to the kingdom of Alexandria... Our mission: to kidnap the heir to the throne, Princess Garnet!

Cinna: I'll take it from here, so listen up! Our ship's about to dock at Alexandria... And when it does, we're gonna put on our costumes... ..and perform 'I Want to Be Your Canary,' the most popular play in Alexandria! Break a leg, Marcus! 'Cause you're playin' the lead!

Marcus: Leave the actin' to me! Of course, the real kidnappers'll be Blank and Zidane!

Blank: I'll distract the audience from the backstage with these little buggers. I can't stand oglops... But I'll manage, so don't worry about me. And that'll be your cue, Zidane!

Zidane: Okay! That's when I kidnap Princess Garnet, right?

Baku: You bet! You're gonna kidnap the most babe-ilicious beauty in all of Alexandria, Princess Garnet!

[We watch a movie of Alexandria and the camera shows the black mage boy at the scene. The camera then shows the theater ship flew by Alexandria. The black mage boy tripped and dropped a ticket. A girl appeared at the scene.]

Girl: Are you awright? Here! You dropped your ticket. Bye-bye!

[The girl left the scene. The black mage boy moves on and later, he ran into

the rat kid.]

Rat Kid: Oww! Why you-get outta my way!!!

[The black mage boy moves on. In the next area...]

Herald: Honorable nobles of Treno... Castle Alexandria is this way!

[The black mage boy proceeds to the ticket booth. Upon arrival...]

Ticketmaster: Can I help you, son?

Black Mage Boy: Uh... Umm...

[The black mage boy shows the ticketmaster the ticket.]

Ticketmaster: What's this? There's something odd about this ticket... Why, it's another fake! I've seen so many today.

Black Mage Boy: Nooooo!

Ticketmaster: Now, now. Don't cry. I know how you must feel. Here, I'll give you these. Do try to cheer up now, hmm?

[The black mage boy receives the Goblin, Fang, and Skeleton Cards.]

Ticketmaster: Talk to Alleyway Jack to learn more about cards. Good luck, lad!

The boy moves on. In the alley, the boy suddenly trips.

Dante the Signmaker: Blast it!

The sign came off on one side.

Dante the Signmaker: Hey! You made me miss, you little klutz!

Dante fixed the sign.

Dante the Signmaker: Whew. That should do it. Well, it's been a long day.

Dante left. Suddenly the rat kid arrived.

Rat Kid: Hey, you! Shrimp! You're the one with the phony ticket, ain'tcha? I saw the guy tell you it was fake!

Pointy-Hat Boy: Y-Yeah, it's fake.

Rat Kid: I'll let you see the show if you become my slave! Well, whaddya say?

Pointy-Hat Boy: Alright.

Rat Kid: Awesome! Now for your first assignment! You go stand over there and see if anyone's comin'!

They take their positions.

Rat Kid: All clear?

Pointy-Hat Boy: Yeah, it's clear.

Rat Kid: Awesome! Engage according to mission parameters!

The boy follows the rat kid who's carrying the ladder to the bell room.

Rat Kid: Now we're gonna climb up this tower! It's very dangerous. You go first.

When the boy attempts to climb up the ladder...

Pointy-Hat Boy: Oww!

A Moogle fell on him.

Rat Kid: Ahahaha! What the heck was that!?

Moogle: Sorry 'bout that, kupo!

Rat Kid: That's Kupo. He's a moogle.

Kupo: Kupo!

Rat Kid: And this is slave number one! Try to get along, okay?

Kupo: Kupo! Pleased to meet you! I sorry. I enter you in Moogle Diary!
If you want to save game onto MEMORY CARD, just ask us moogles, kupo!
And you can regain health if you have a Tent, kupo! You understand?

Pointy-Hat Boy: I understand.

Kupo: Glad I can help you, kupo!

Rat Kid: Alright, time for some upward mobility!

The rat kid with a ladder climbs up the ladder to the top area.

Rat Kid: Okay, come on up, slave!

Another moogle arrived.

Stiltzkin: Kupo...? You here?

Kupo: Kupo! Stiltzkin! You leaving, kupo?

Stiltzkin: Yeah, and this time I might be away for a long time.

Kupo: I'll miss you, kupo.

Stiltzkin: Now, don't you worry. I'll write.

Kupo: Okay, kupo!

Stiltzkin: Well, I'm off. Take care! Oh, and say hi to Mosh in the castle for me.

Stiltzkin left.

Point-Hat Boy: Was that a friend of yours?

Kupo: Yes, kupo. A very special one, kupo!!!

Rat Kid: Hey, slave! I thought I ordered you up here!!!

The boy follows the rat kid.

Rat Kid: Alright, the play's gonna start if we don't hurry!

The boy follows the rat kid.

Rat Kid: Come on! Get over here! Lemme guess... You're afraid of heights, aren't you? It's okay! Just pretend you're on the ground!

The boy crawls cross the platform.

Rat Kid: Come on! We're runnin' out of time!

The boy moves on.

Rat Kid: Not again... Don't worry! It won't fall!

The boy crosses the platform. After he made it to where rat kid is, the platform fell.

Rat Kid: Hahaha... I guess it fell. No point in worrying now, right?

While moving on...

Rat Kid: Oh yeah, I almost forgot! I don't even know your name!

Rat Kid: So your name's Vivi, huh? Kinda funny name... My name's Puck! Pleased to meetcha!

Vivi and Puck finally made to the end of the rooftops with a bridge.

Puck: Whew... I finally made it!

Puck used the ladder as a platform.

Puck: After that wall, we'll be inside the castle! C'mon, let's go!

We watch a movie of Alexandria Castle and the performance is about to begin. Princess Garnet is not happy. The screen switches to King Leo (Baku's role).

King Leo: Ladies and Gentlemen! Tonight's performance is a story that takes place long, long ago. Our heroine, Princess Cornelia, is torn from her lover, Marcus. She attempts to flee the castle, only to be captured by her father, King Leo. When our story begins, Marcus, having heard of this, crosses swords with the king. And now, Your Royal Majesty, Queen Brahne, Your Highness, Princess Garnet... ..noble ladies and lords, and our rooftop viewers, Tantalus proudly presents 'I want to Be Your Canary'!

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Blank: Bereft of father! Bereft of father! Marcus! Thou has lost even thy love!

Cinna: Fortune hath escap'd thee! For what end shalt thou live?

Zidane: For the sake of our friends... Let us bury our steal in the heart of the wretched King Leo!

Cinna: Aye!

Blank: Aye!

Out to the stage...

Blank: We shall back thee, kinsman!

Marcus: Pray, sheathe thy swords! This villain is mine alone!

Cinna: Nay, kinsman! For I, too, have lost a brother to this fiend!

King Leo: What ho? Out, vermin! Away! Thou daarest bare thy sword before the king!? All who stand in my way will be crush'd!

Zidane: Treacherous Leo, my kinsman's suffering shall not be in vain! For I shall instruct thee in his incomparable pain!

Zidane's group fights King Leo. After that...

King Leo: Arrg... Grr... Thou hast not seen the last of me, Marcus!

Zidane: Come back!

Blank blocked Zidane's way.

Zidane: Out of the way, Blank!

Blank: Consider this, Zidane! If Prince Schneider were to marry Princess Cornelia, peace would reign over both their kingdoms!

Zidane: 'Tis foolishness! If all were so easy, why, none would suffer in this world!

Zidane and Blank begin sword fighting. In the crowds' area...

Blank: En garde!

Zidane: Expect no quarter from me!

After the duel...

Blank: We shall finish this later!

Zidane: Come back here!

In the castle, Zidane and Blank beat up the guards and took their armors.

Blank: Hehehe! Finish changing, Zidane?

Zidane: Yeah, but this helmet... It kinda smells...

Blank: What are you talkin' about!? My helmet totally reeks! My armor's way too big... And my back is real itchy... The boots are wet... My gloves are all slimy... There's cookie crumbs in my pockets...

Zidane: Okay, I get the picture... You still have the package, right?

Blank: Don't worry! I won't screw up!

Blank catches the oglop.

Zidane: Alright! First I'll go pour some sleep potion into Princess Garnet's teacup!

Blank: And I've got a special something for the lovely queen! (examines the naked guards) Hehehe. They're sleeping so soundly!

Outside the first floor...

Blank: According to recon... ..the royal seats should be right above these stairs!

Zidane: Got it!

Blank: Uh-oh! The scene where Marcus sneaks into Cornelia's chamber is about to start! Let's get this over with before the finale, okay?

Zidane goes upstairs and saw a girl in a white mage robe.

Zidane: (Hmm? She sure dressed funny...)

Hooded Girl: Umm... Would you let me pass?

Zidane: Hmm... (Let her pass.) Wait. Hold on a sec! Haven't we met before?

Hooded Girl: No, I do not know you...

Zidane: Hmm... Maybe you're right... I'd never let someone as pretty as you get away. Say, you wouldn't-

Blank: Hey, what's goin' on, Zidane?

Hooded Girl: I... I must go!

The hooded girl left and ran through both Zidane and Blank.

Blank: Who the heck was that!?

Zidane: Get up, Blank! That was Princess Garnet!

Blank: Are you serious!?

Meanwhile...

Zorn: We are in trouble!

Thorn: Trouble are we in!

Zorn: This is terrible!

Thorn: Our heads, Queen Brahne will have!

Zorn: We must hurry!

Thorn: Hurry, we must!

Zorn: We are in trouble!

Thorn: Trouble are we in!

Moving on...

Thorn: The right way, that is not!

Zorn: I know it is not the right way!

Thorn: Really, do you?

Zorn: I really do!

Thorn: Wonder, I sometimes do.

Zorn: N-Now is not the time to wonder!

Thorn: Hurry to Queen Brahne, must we!

Zorn: We must hurry to Queen Brahne!

Moving upstairs...

Zorn: That is not the right way!

Thorn: N-Not the right way, I know!

Zorn: Do you really?

Thorn: Know I really do!!!

Zorn: I really wonder sometimes.

Thorn: Th-The time to wonder now is not!

Zorn: We must hurry and tell Her Majesty!

Thorn: Hurry to see Her Majesty, we must!

Moving on...

Zorn: Your Majesty!

Thorn: See the queen, we must!

Captain of the Knights of Pluto: Her Majesty is busy! Come back later!

Beatrix: Is it an emergency?

Thorn: An emergency, it is!

Zorn: A veritable emergency of terrible urgency!

Beatrix: Very well. I'll see what I can do.

Thorn: Very grateful, we'll be!

Zorn: We'll be very grateful!

Captain of the Knights of Pluto: Grrr! Curse that Beatrix! Always trying to one-up me!

Beatrix: So, what exactly is the problem?

Zorn: Her Royal Highness...

Thorn: Princess Garnet...

Zorn: ...is in danger!

Thorn: ...is in danger!

Beatrix: I see. Wait right there.

Queen Brahne: No interruptions! Can't you see I'm watching the show!?

Beatrix: Your Majesty, I'm afraid Princess Garnet has-

Queen Brahne: Ah, yes... She did leave her seat awhile ago.

Beatrix: Your Majesty, it seems that Princess Garnet has run off with the Royal Pendant.

Queen Brahne: Well, of all the... What could be thinking!? General Beatrix!

Beatrix: Your Majesty!

Queen Brahne: And, Captain...uh... Captain Steiner!

Steiner: Yes, Your Majesty!

Queen Brahne: Go find Garnet!

Steiner: Yes, my queen!

Beatrix: At once, Your Majesty!

Steiner steps in the top floor.

Steiner: Knights of Pluto! ASSEMBLE!!! Huh? Where is everybody!?

Blutzen, Pluto Knight II: Captain, sir!

Kohel, Pluto Knight III: All present and accounted for, sir!

Steiner: What are you talking about!? There's only two of you! Where are the other six!? Why, you useless good-for-nothings! I bring orders from the queen! Get dressed and go find Princess Garnet!

Steiner goes to the top of the balcony.

Steiner: Whew... Fatigue rears its ugly head. No! I must preserve! The princess must be found!

Steiner suddenly saw Zidane chasing the Hooded Girl.

Steiner: Wait! Over here! It's Princess Garnet! Being hounded by brigands! Fear not, princess! Your knight is coming!

We watch a movie of hooded girl grabbing the wire and jumping off. Zidane and Steiner thought she was committing suicide. Later, the hooded girl landed in the airship.

Zidane: Huh? Where'd the princess go?

Hooded Girl: Woo!

The hooded girl left. Zidane follows her. Inside the ship, the hooded girl bumps into Ruby.

Ruby: Whoa! Whut in tarnation!? Hold yer horses, there! Whut kinda cattle you chasin', darlin'? You should at least say yer sorry!

Hooded Girl: Please pardon me. I was in a hurry, you see...

Ruby: And here I am, fixin' to get ready fer my big entrance!

Zidane came in.

Ruby: Hey, Zidane! Did you see the way she hit me!? This cowgirl's wilder than a buckin' bronco!

Zidane: Just let me talk to her, Ruby!

Ruby: Come again, pardner!? Did you hear what I was sayin'!?

Zidane: (to the hooded girl who ran) Hey! (to Ruby) Ruby! We'll talk later!

Zidane stopped the hooded girl.

Zidane: Whew... Well, it looks like you've finally made up your mind. (Wow. We really had to improvise. But hey, we got her!)

Hooded Girl: Do you... do you work on this theater ship?

Zidane: (Aww... So she figured it out, huh?)

Hooded Girl: As you have no doubt suspected... ..the truth is that... I am actually... Princess Garnet Til Alexandros, heir to the throne of Alexandria.

Garnet: I have a favor I wish to ask of you... I wish to be kidnapped right away.

Zidane: H-Huh!? I don't... I mean...

Steiner: Princess! Where are you!?

Steiner called for Garnet.

Garnet: Please... They've come for me!

Zidane: Aha... So that's what's going on... Alright! Leave them to me!

Garnet: Thank you. You have my gratitude.

Zidane: (kneels) Alright then, Your Highness! I shall hereby kidnap you!

Suddenly, Cinna came in.

Cinna: What're you two doin'? Come on, this way!

Garnet: Aaah!

Zidane: (to Garnet) Don't worry, Princess. It's my friend Cinna!

Garnet: Oh, really? I am sorry. You startled me. Well, with a face like his, I'd be pretty shocked, too!

Cinna: Man, that hurts! I wash up every morning, you know!

Steiner: (yelling from another room) Princess!?

Cinna: (to Zidane and Garnet) This way!

Zidane: Alright, we'll follow you!

Zidane's group followed Cinna to the meeting room. Steiner came in the theater ship.

Steiner: Princess? Princess... Princess! Princess...? PRINCESS!!!!?
Princess?

One of Steiner's knight arrived.

Steiner: Where have you been!?

Pluto Knight: Sir! I'm sorry, sir!

Steiner: Princess!

Meanwhile in the meeting room...

Zidane: Hey, Cinna! This is a dead end!

Cinna: Hehehe. I thought this might happen... Open! Sesame!

The escape hatch opened.

Cinna: So I set up this escape hatch!

Steiner: (yelling from another room) Princess!

Cinna: Come on! Jump inside!

Zidane's group jumps into the hatch. Steiner and the knight got in the meeting room.

Steiner: The princess must be down there!

Pluto Knight: I-I'll go first, sir!

The knight jumped to the hatch, but he is stuck.

Steiner: Hey!!! What do you think you're doing!?

Pluto Knight: Captain, sir! I'm stuck, sir!

Steiner: Grrrrr! Blast it!

Steiner looks for another way to follow Zidane's group.

Pluto Knight: Hehehe. He bought it!

Later with Zidane's group.

Zidane: Wow, you're really athletic, Princess. I think I'm falling for you!

Garnet: This is nothing. I have been training to escape the castle, after all.

Zidane: What a waste. If only you weren't a princess...

Garnet: We have no time for idle banter. Come, let us move on!

Zidane's group proceeds to the pole area. Suddenly, Steiner slides down the pole and saw Zidane's group.

Steiner: Aha! Princess! I, Steiner, have come to your rescue!

Pluto Knight: You needn't worry, Your Highness!

Steiner: Good work! This will be remembered as the Pluto Knights' finest hour!

Pluto Knight: Hehehe. Just relax, Princess. We'll get you outta here!

Steiner: WHAT!!!? You're not one of my knights!

Zidane: You can just...

Cinna: ...leave the princess...

Zidane, Cinna, and Pluto Knight: ...to us!

Zidane's group fights Steiner. After the fight...

Steiner: I'll never give up!

Steiner destroyed the Pluto Knight's armor and the knight is actually Blank. Suddenly, Oglops appeared.

Steiner: N-NO!!! I hate oglops!!!

After the fight...

Zidane: (to Garnet) Now's our chance. Come on!

Zidane and Garnet moves on. The screen switches to Baku as King Leo.

King Leo: Tonight, I shall finally see my daughter Cornelia betroth'd to Prince Schneider! And then Prince Schneider and his kingdom will be mine! Gwahahahaha!

Zenero and Benero arrived with Marcus held by them.

Zenero: Your Majesty!

Benero: We have caught an intruder!

King Leo: Why, my poor Marcus! Hark, lad. No matter how much thou dost treasure Cornelia... ..no matter how deeply she might believe she doth love thee... ..never shall I see her marry a peasant such as thee! When yon bell strikes three... under the axe thou shall be!

The screen switches to Zidane and Garnet. In the platform room...

Garnet: What now? We cannot go any further!

Zidane: Hmmm...

Cinna arrived.

Cinna: Zidane! Get on Number Two!

Zidane: Okay! Princess Garnet, this way!

Steiner: Stop!

Steiner suddenly came in and shoved Cinna out of his way. Steiner follows Zidane and Garnet up to the stage. Meanwhile in the stage...

King Leo: Furthermore.

Suddenly, Zidane, Garnet, and Steiner came up from the platform.

King Leo (Baku): (Princess Garnet!?)

Zidane: (Guys! Just improvise!)

Steiner: Ho? What's all this?

Marcus breaks free from Zenero and Benero. Marcus approaches to Garnet.

Marcus: Cornelia!

Garnet: (Um...)

Zidane: (Marcus is Cornelia's lover!)

Garnet: Oh, Marcus!

Zidane: (Yeah, you're doing great!)

Garnet: (Ahaha. I have studied drama, you know.)

Baku: (Okay, guys. Let's keep going. Brahne's still watchin', after all!)

Garnet: (embracing Marcus) Oh, Marcus! I missed you so! I wish never to leave thy side. Prithee, lead me from this place!

Zidane: See, King Leo? Thou shouldst give them thy blessing!

Baku: Never! Never leave his side, thou sayest? Foolish banter! I'll not allow it! Cornelia shall marry none other than this man-Prince Schneider! If that not so, Prince Schneider?

Steiner: M-Marry the princess? Me!?

Baku: Aye! And this traitorous crew, I will put to death!

Zidane and Marcus punches Zenero and Benero.

Benero: Too many of them!

Zenero: Run away!

Baku: Pray, sweet daughter, come home to the castle with me.

Garnet: Nay, Father! I shan't return!

Baku: Cornelia... Trouble me no more. This wedding is for thine own welfare. Be mindful of that.

Marcus: Not if I can help it!!! Now is my moment of vengeance! For my parents, and for my love, Cornelia... (draws his sword) I shall cut thee down!

Garnet: Ngh!

Garnet blocks the way, but Marcus' sword went through the left side of Garnet.

Marcus: No... Cornelia!!!

Garnet: Mar...cus, forgive me. I still love my father...

Baku: Cornelia!

Steiner: Princess!

Garnet: Prithee, forgive my selfishness, Father, and spare my sweet Marcus...

Garnet plays dead.

Marcus: What have I done!? Am I never to hear her loving voice again!? Am I cursed never again to feel her soft touch!? O, cruel fate! Thou hast robbed me of all I treasure!

Marcus pretends to stab himself.

Marcus: Ngh!

Zidane: Marcus!

Now we are with Queen Brahne.

Queen Brahne: Oh, my! This year's show is splendid! Waaaaaaa! Why did she have to die!? Why!? (Now, where could Garnet be?) Boo-hoo-hoooo!!! (crying)

Now we are with Vivi and Puck.

Puck: Wow, what a show!

Vivi: Yeah, so sad...

Puck: I'm glad we climbed all the way over here. How 'bout you, huh?
Uh-oh! Look out!

Vivi and Puck are chased by two Knights of Pluto.

Puck: Fool! I'm outta here!

Later at the stage...

Baku: (to the fallen Garnet) Forgive me!!!

Steiner: Princess!!!

Vivi suddenly arrived at the stage.

Vivi: Leave me alone!

Knight 1: Stop!

Knight 2: Come back here!

Vivi: Don't come any closer!

Vivi cast Fire, but it hit Garnet.

Garnet: Ow! That's hot!

Garnet took off the White Mage robe.

Baku: Zidane! It's time!

Zidane: Princess Garnet! Let's get outta here!

Steiner: What... What is going on!?

Garnet: Steiner! Don't follow me anymore!

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Captain, sir! We await your orders, sir!

Steiner: Hmmm... Well... Umm... Errr... Princess! I'm afraid I cannot comply!

Garnet: Stubborn as always, aren't you?

Zidane: Come on, Princess. Let's ditch Sir Rustalot and get outta here!

Steiner: Princess, wait!

Zidane: (to Vivi laying on the ground) Hey, kid... You okay!?

Vivi: Y-Yeah. I just tripped, that's all...

Steiner: Princess, I cannot allow you to go! (to the knights) Seize them at once!

Zidane's group fights Steiner and the knights. After Zidane's group wins the fight...

Steiner: Bah! Only a flesh wound!

Later in the theater ship's control room...

Cinna: Stabilizers configured!

Baku: Good!

Blank: Engine room is good to go!

Baku: Alright! We're movin' out!

Cinna: Roger that!

Blank: It's about time!

We watch a movie of the theater ship taking off and suddenly, Queen Brahne calls the soldiers to fire harpoons at the ship. Then, the soldiers fired a Bomb. Zidane's group fights Steiner with Bomb behind him. After the fight, Bomb grew bigger and blew itself up near the ship. The theater ship is on fire while it's moving.

Cinna: We're gonna crash!!!

Suddenly, the theater ship crashed into the forest. Meanwhile in Alexandria Castle...

Queen Brahne: Garnet... I never imagined you would do such a thing. Perhaps you're not such a helpless little girl anymore... Zorn! Thorn! Is our little experiment ready?

Zorn: Yes, Your Majesty. It is combat-ready.

Thorn: Easily terminate Princess Garnet, it can, Your Majesty.

Queen Brahne: I need her alive! Bring her back at once!

The screen switches to the crews of the wrecked theater ship...

Baku: Oww... My back's killin' me. Are you alright?

Cinna: Yeah, but the Prima Vista's wasted.

Baku: Just our luck to crash in this forest... It's gonna get interesting...

Cinna: What do you mean, 'interesting,' Boss? I hear no one's ever made it outta here alive.

Blank: Boss! There's fire everywhere! It's outta control!

Baku: Quit yer whinin' and get it under control! And get the wounded outta here!

Blank: Alright!

Baku: (to Cinna) Get our good outta here, too: weapons, items, anything

we can use! There's no way we can survive if all our stuff is toast.

Cinna: I'm on it!

Outside, Cinna is doing what Baku told him to do.

Cinna: Phew... I'm beat... Hurry up and put out the fire! I can't carry'em all by myself!

Zenero carried a musician out.

Cinna: What the hell are they doin'!? The whole ship's gonna burn up!

Zenero: They're lookin' for Garnet... Can't find her anywhere. Maybe she fell off... Got squashed under the ship.

Cinna: This is great. First we kidnap her, then we kill her. We'll hang for sure.

Zidane arrived.

Cinna: Zidane, I'm surprised you made it! I can't believe you jumped off! You're nuts, you know that?

Zidane: I didn't jump off. I got thrown out from the impact. So, is everyone okay?

Cinna: Yeah. We've all got the devil's luck. But if we don't find Princess Garnet, we're all dead meat.

Zidane searches for Garnet in Evil Forest. Later, he saw Garnet held captive by a monster. Zidane is with Steiner and Vivi.

Vivi: Sh-She's in trouble...

Zidane: ...What the hell is that?

Zidane saw the Prison Cage monster.

Steiner: Release the princess at once!!!

Zidane: Yeah, like it's gonna really listen to you. Come on!

Zidane and Steiner fight Prison Cage. After that, Prison Cage got away with the unconscious Garnet.

Steiner: Princess? PRINCESS!!!

Zidane: What the heck? Where did they go?

Vivi: She's gone... I was too scared to cast any spells... That monster's probably gonna eat her...

Steiner: How could I let this happen!?

Zidane: Don't worry. She's not dead yet. That monster was only a minion. He's probably gonna take her to his master.

Steiner: That means the princess might still become! We must go find her at once!

Vivi: WHOA!!!

Prison Cage came back and holds Vivi captive.

Zidane: !!!

Steiner: !!!

Zidane and Steiner fights Prison Cage. Vivi tried Fire and it works against Prison Cage. After Zidane's group teamed up to defeat Prison Cage, Vivi is released.

Vivi: Phew... Th-Thanks...

Zidane: Are you alright?

Vivi: Y-Yeah... I think so.

Prison Cage spew seeds to Vivi and Steiner.

Vivi: !!!

Steiner: UGH!

Zidane: !!!

Steiner: P-Prin...cess...

Prison Cage is dead. Zidane carried Vivi and Steiner back to the theater ship. Now we are with Blank and Vivi.

Blank: You guys are lucky. If it weren't for Zidane, you'd both be dead. Some of the monsters in this forest reproduce by planting seeds in other animals. And when the seeds sprout, it's hasta la vista: you become beef jerky.

Vivi: Um... A-Am I gonna die?

Blank: No. You're gonna be fine. Here, drink this. It'll remove all the seeds from your body.

Vivi drinks the medicine.

Vivi: Ugh...eeyuck...

The screen switches to Steiner and Zenero.

Steiner: Princess... I'm coming right now...

Benero: ...Stand aside!

Benero got in Steiner's way.

Benero: Room behind you. Go.

Steiner: The princess... is in grave danger! Do you intend to ABANDON HER!?

Benero: You're in no condition.

Zenero: Don't worry about the princess. The boss'll think of something.

Steiner: Hey! Stop!

Benero pushed Steiner to his room and closed the door.

Zenero: Get some rest.

Benero: Yeah, and take that medicine I gave you.

The screen switches to Steiner.

Steiner: Dammit... I can't just stand here... The princess's life rests in my hands. What can their boss possibly accomplish!? This medicine... It smells terrible. And the color... This is obviously poison! <Huff-huff-heave-heave.> Ugh... I can't take it anymore... God help me!

Steiner drinks the medicine.

Steiner: Hey... Not bad.

The screen switches to Zidane and Baku.

Baku: Forget it. Monsters born out of Mist are crawlin' everywhere.

Zidane: So what? There's nothing out there we can't handle.

Baku: Yeah, but what are we gonna do about the wounded?

Zidane: We can take 'em with us.

Baku: How are we gonna carry all of them? Trust me. We go out now, and we'll all get wasted. My boys come before the princess, you know. It's too bad...

Zidane: !!!

Baku: We're gonna stay put 'til everyone recovers. You better not set one foot outside this ship. You got that!?

Zidane: I can't believe you're abandoning her! You're nothing but a big coward!

Zidane went to Vivi's room.

Vivi: Oh... Th-Thank you for helping me.

Zidane: Ah, don't mention it. Besides, it was your black magic that saved the day. You know, you've got some major power for such a little guy.

Vivi:

Zidane: What's wrong...? Are you peeved at me because I called you little? Hey, you're a great mage with great powers, alright? To hell with looks. It's what's inside that counts.

Vivi: I'm sorry. When that monster caught her, I couldn't do anything...

Zidane: Hey, don't worry about the princess. I'll get her back. I promise.

Vivi: Thank you, Mr. Zidane.

Zidane: Whoa, that's the first time anyone's called me 'Mr.' Just call me Zidane, alright?

Vivi: Okay...Zidane.

Zidane left Vivi's room. Zidane talks to himself.

Zidane: Geez... He was pretty down... Maybe I shouldn't have made that promise. I don't even know if I'll be able to find her...

The screen switches to the flashback of Zidane.

Zidane: Man... I never felt so strange... Maybe fate brought us together... I can't explain it...

The flashback ended.

Zidane: Man, I can't stop thinking about her... What am I gonna do...? (Go look for her.) Yeah! What's there to think about!? She's cute...and she's in trouble. That's all that matters.

Blank: ...There you are.

Blank arrived.

Blank: Why are you so serious? Uh-oh... What are you up to this time?

Zidane: I'm gonna take that knight and the black mage to find the princess.

Blank: You're crazy! Man, you don't even know what's out there. Besides, there's no way the boss'll allow that.

Zidane: I know...

Blank: Sheez... Why do you always gotta play hero? The boss is gonna kill you. Well, what are you waiting for? Go talk to the boss.

Zidane goes to Baku's room.

Baku: (sleeping) AH! AAAH! AAACHOOO!!! (sneezing) Took you long enough... I fell asleep, darn it. So, you're leaving, eh?

Zidane: Yeah... I promised Garnet I'd kidnap her.

Baku: Gwahaha! I didn't ask you why! I can't blame you, though. She's damn beautiful. I guess that's reason enough! Well, I hope you're ready! 'Cause I'm gonna bust you up for breakin' the rules.

Zidane: ...Alright.

Baku: Okay, get your butt over to the cargo room. We got more room there.

In the cargo room...

Baku: You ready!?

Zidane: Anytime!

Baku: I ain't holdin' back.

Zidane fights Baku. After Zidane wins the fight...

Baku: Alright, you win.

Later...

Baku: I'll be damned... Bravo!

Baku punched Zidane.

Baku: Go find your princess! Gwahahahaha...

Baku left.

Zidane: Damn, that hurt! He pulled his punches 'til that last one.

Zidane finds Steiner.

Steiner:

Zidane came in Steiner's room.

Zidane: Come on. You're too old to be playing with a doll.

Steiner: Silence! A scoundrel like you could never understand! I'm just overwhelmed with concern for the princess! If only you rogues hadn't kidnapped her... This is all your fault! If anything should happen to the princess, I will have your head!

Zidane: Take it easy. Geez... I'm gonna go look for her now. I'll let you come with me if you promise to be good. What do you say, Rusty?

Steiner: (pissed off) RR...RUSTY!!!? I am Adelbert Steiner, Captain of the Knights of Pluto, and I will never work with you conniving thieves!

Zidane: Captain? I figured you were a private, what's with that cheap, rusty armor... Look, this has nothing to do with Tantalus. It's something I decided to do on my own. I just wanna save Garnet.

Steiner: Hmph...! You had better not be lying! Because if you are, I won't hesitate to kill you!

Zidane: Yeah, yeah. I'm counting on you, Rusty.

Steiner: Make no mistake. I'm going with you to rescue the princess! I will deal with you personally when this is over!

Zidane: ...Whatever.

Steiner: It may be difficult with just two of us. We should seek Master Vivi's help as well.

Zidane: Why are you calling him 'Master'?

Steiner: You fool. That black mage has unimaginable powers... I don't want to get him involved, but alas, it can't be helped. We need Master Vivi's powers to rescue the princess.

Zidane: Alright, let's go talk to Vivi.

Zidane and Steiner finds Vivi in his room.

Zidane: Well, Vivi, we're ready to go look for the princess.

Vivi: Really!? That's great! Be careful, okay?

Zidane: Actually, we want you to come with us, too.

Vivi: Huh!? B-But I can't do anything.

Steiner: Hardly, Master Vivi. Your magic was highly effective against that monster. In all honesty, I hold your power in greater than I do this scoundrel's.

Vivi: B-But...I'm scared. I couldn't even move last time.

Steiner: Please, Master Vivi. For the sake of Princess Garnet and all of Alexandria, I humbly request your assistance!

Zidane: Come on! You're a black mage, for crying out loud! Show us what you got! Alright, let's get going.

Vivi: ...Okay. I'll... try my best.

Steiner: Thank you, Master Vivi. Master Vivi...

Vivi: Yeah?

Steiner: It's about your black magic. I wish to try an experiment. (I was wondering if...) <Whisper, whisper...>

Vivi: Magic sword...? Okay. I'll give it a try.

On their way out...

Blank: Sheez... you really dig her, huh?

Zidane: I can't sit around knowing a girl's in trouble. Goes against my nature.

Blank: Whatever. You're full of crap.

Zidane: Ohhh... I get it. You're jealous that I'm gonna get me a sweetie pie.

Blank: Pshhh... She's not even my type. I came down to give you this.

Zidane: You're always thinking about me...but I won't need a love potion to reel this one in.

Blank: Why don't you get your mind off girls for a second? This is the medicine I gave to that black mage and the knight. It's sort of like a seed remover.

Zidane: Cool. This'll really come in handy.

Blank: Why am I always helping you...?

Zidane received Blank's Medicine.

Blank: Oh yeah. Here's a little tip from the boss.

Zidane reads the letter. The letter says as follows:

Don't forget to set your abilities. Leaving the band is your business, but you better keep training! Learning more abilities is gonna make you even stronger.

Good luck,
Baku

Zidane: Hey, Blank, how do you set abilities again?

Blank: Man, how can you forget? It's so basic. Open the Menu, select Ability, select Equip, and choose them abilities you wanna set.

Zidane: Thanks, Blank. I'll see you when I see you.

Blank: How about never?

Zidane's group moves on. We watch the movie of the place full of monster flowers. Zidane's group finally found Garnet held captive by Plant Brain.

Vivi: There she is!

Zidane: So, this is the master.

Steiner: Princess!!! You stay out of this! Alexandria would be disgraced if a mere bandit should rescue the princess.

Zidane: You think you can handle him on your own?

Steiner:

Zidane: Let's get him, Vivi!

Zidane's group fights Plant Brain. Later, Blank joined the fight and they all teamed up to defeat Plant Brain. After that...

Steiner: Princess!!! Please get a hold of yourself!

Blank: Zidane, give her the stuff.

Zidane gives Garnet Blank's Medicine.

Garnet: <Hack-hack...>

Steiner: Princess, please try to drink all of it.

Vivi: Is she gonna be okay?

Suddenly, the ground is shaking.

Blank: Oh, man! What now!?

Plant Spiders popped out.

Blank: Sheez! We're gonna be surrounded!

Zidane: Let's get out of here!

Blank: GO! (to Vivi) What are you waitin' for!?

Zidane's group are chased by Plant Spiders.

Blank: What are you doin'!?

Zidane: Something's wrong...

Blank: What?

Zidane: The entire forest is coming after us. Blank... Take care of everyone.

Blank: (What did he mean by that?)

We watch a movie of all the crew running and Blank is caught by one of the Plant Spider. The forest started to petrify and Blank threw the map to Zidane. Zidane escaped successfully, but Blank is petrified. Later...

Zidane: Dammit!!! That idiot! Blank...

Later, Zidane's group are camping.

Vivi: I hope she gets well soon...

Steiner: This is all his fault! (to Zidane) Have you nothing to say, you filth!?

Garnet: ...Oh...

Garnet woke up.

Steiner: P-Princess!!!

Garnet: ...Steiner? ...How did I survive...? You brought me here?

Steiner: It is my sworn duty to protect you at any cost.

Zidane: What are you talking about? It was Vivi's magic and my dagger that got you out of there, Princess.

Garnet: I thank you both.

Steiner: That monkey deserves no praise! None of this would've happened if you and your band hadn't abducted the princess! And how dare you claim that you have rescued her!? When we get back to Alexandria, I will-

Garnet: I left the castle of my own will.

Zidane: What a coincidence, eh? We went to snatch her, and she wanted

to be snatched.

Steiner: Impossible!

Garnet: It's true.

Zidane: So what do you say, Rusty? Friends? Come on, let's just enjoy this camping trip while it lasts.

Steiner: Camping-you imbecile! Surely you even you must know something about the Mist. The vicious monsters it spawns! The abnormalities it stirs in the mind and body! Princess, we must leave this dangerous place at once.

Zidane: You've gotta be kidding. She hasn't fully recovered yet.

Steiner: Silence! Who asked for your opinion!?

Zidane: Alright, tell me... How do you plan to get out of here? We're standing in a valley surrounded by cliffs. And last I heard, North Gate and South Gate were sealed off.

Steiner:

Zidane: Yeah. That's what I thought.

Steiner: Grrrrr...

Zidane: The princess can barely walk right now. You went through this. You should know. I think we should rest for now.

Steiner: I will never follow your-

Zidane: Steiner!!! State your sworn duty!

Steiner: What else!? To protect Princess Garnet Til Alexandros! ...Very well. Until the princess recovers, I will guard this place with my life.

Zidane: Sounds good to me. Vivi, let's get some rest.

The next morning...

Zidane: How are you feeling?

Garnet: Good...thanks to that medicine you gave me. Could this be...?

Zidane: Yeah, I was surprised too. After we beat that big plant-guy, the forest got completely petrified.

Garnet: Vivi told me that we were able to escape because of your friend.

Zidane: ...His name is Blank.

Garnet: We must go help him.

Zidane: We can't do anything for him right now.

Garnet: But...I can't-

Zidane: We'll come back for him. I'm sure there's a way to cure him. Let's get going. According to the map that Blank gave me, there's a cavern to the south of us. Maybe we can get above the Mist through that cavern. Are you alright? Everything's gonna be fine. Trust me.

Later, a moogle is arriving to Zidane's group.

Vivi: Look! There's something coming!

Monty: Wait! Kupo! I'm impressed, Kupo! First time I've seen anyone escape from Evil Forest. You all must be strong, kupo! But don't get cocky, kupo. Lots of stronger monsters ahead. Before you go out to the world, Mogster will teach you a few things.

After Zidane's group learned all the basic survival stuff...

Monty: I have a gift for you, kupo. Take this flute.

Zidane received Moogle's Flute.

Monty: With this flute, you can call us anywhere in the world, kupo. Press ? to play it. Happy trails! Kupo!

Garnet: Thank you.

Monty: Kupopo!

Vivi: Bye!

Monty: Kupoo!

Zidane slaps Steiner to get his attention that Zidane's group is moving on.

Steiner: !!! What the... Who goes there!?

Monty: Your friends already left, kupo.

Steiner: Princess, wait!

Zidane's group proceeds to Ice Cavern. Near the entrance...

Zidane: This must be the cavern...

Vivi: U-Um...

Zidane: What's up, Vivi?

Vivi: Have you ever heard of the Ice Cavern?

Zidane: Sure... Is this the place?

Vivi: I think so... It's supposed to be near the Evil Forest.

Garnet: ...I've heard of it. It's supposed to be a beautiful place, covered in ice.

Vivi: My grandpa told me about this place. He said the cavern takes travelers to the top of the Mist.

Steiner: Bravo! Master Vivi's grandfather must be quite a scholar! We must thank him upon escaping the Mist!

Vivi: My grandpa used to teach me lots of things, but he passed away...

Steiner: Oh... Forgive my indiscretion.

Vivi: Don't worry about it.

Zidane: Well...why don't we go inside?

Inside...

Garnet: Oh...! What a beautiful place! Seeing the actual cavern is so much better than reading about it! Oh, how pretty... I wonder what kind of flower this is?

Steiner: Princess! Please, don't touch anything!

Zidane: Can we get moving? I'm freezin' here.

Zidane's group moves on. In the blizzard area...

Zidane: Vivi, hurry up, or you'll left behind!

Vivi: I...I'm coming.

Garnet: Oh no!

Vivi collapsed.

Steiner: Master Vivi! Are you okay?

Steiner collapsed.

Zidane: Yo, Rusty! You're...not alright, are you? What happened to you guys? Hey, Rusty! Move it or lose it! Get up!

Zidane kicks Steiner.

Zidane: It's no use.

Garnet collapsed.

Zidane: Oh no! Garnet! Not you, too? Garnet? She's out cold... Shoot... I'm falling asleep...

A little later, Zidane got up.

Zidane: What's that sound...? It came from over there... Is somebody there...?

Zidane approaches the area where the blizzard came from.

???: Why didn't you fall asleep?

It is Black Waltz No. 1.

Black Waltz No. 1: You should be dead by now...

Zidane: Are you the one causing this blizzard?

Black Waltz No. 1: Hee-hee-hee... That's right!

Zidane fights Black Waltz and Sealion. After Zidane defeats them...

Mysterious Voice: You defeated No. 1, but No. 2 and No. 3 will reclaim the princess!

Zidane: Wh-Who's there? Oh, whatever... I've gotta go back and check on them!

Later, Zidane's group got up.

Garnet: Zidane!

Zidane: Hey, there. Everybody okay?

Steiner: You! What just happened?

Zidane: It was no big deal.

Steiner: You're hiding something!

Zidane: Hey, nothing happened. You heard me.

Steiner: You...didn't touch the princess, did you?

Zidane: Just what are you accusing me of?

Garnet: Steiner, he said nothing happened. Why are you being so rude?

Steiner: ...My apologies, Princess.

Garnet: Well, I'm glad everyone is safe. Shall we move on? Zidane? Is something bothering you?

Zidane: No... It's nothing.

Zidane's group moves on. Outside of the Ice Cavern...

Garnet: We made it through the Mist! Oh, the sun feels great!

Zidane: Look, there's a village. I think I've been there before...

Garnet: It sounds like you've been everywhere, Zidane. The only other worlds I've visited are in books. You may have been to that village. Let's go visit.

Zidane: Wait. Hold it. You're a princess! You can't just go rushing in there. People are looking for you. You need a new identity.

Steiner got angry and pushed Zidane. Zidane's caught himself when he's about to fall off the cliff and he dropped his dagger.

Steiner: Insolent fool! The princess need not sneak around! Besides, we're heading back to the castle. You leave her alone. And you will address her as 'Princess' from now on, you silly peasant!

Zidane: Dammit, Rusty! Why don't you shut up? Who do you think you are?
I don't take orders from a stuck-up jerk like you!

Vivi: You guys!

Garnet: Stop it, you two! ...Steiner, I do not intend to return to the castle. And I do see Zidane's point. I need a new name... (picked up Zidane's dagger) Zidane... What is this called?

Zidane: That? That's a dagger. All knives of that length are called daggers. Short swords are a bit longer. The big sword you hold with both hands is called a broadsword. And...

Garnet: Oh, okay... I understand now. So this is called a 'dagger'...

Steiner: Princess! It's a weapon! Please be careful.

Garnet: I've decided! From now on, my name is... Dagger. I will be called Dagger from now on. What do you think, Zidane?

Zidane: Is that okay with you?

Garnet: (Yes.)

Zidane: Great, Dagger. Now, let's work on your speech... Try to sound more casual. Like me.

Dagger (Garnet's nickname): I shall try.

Zidane: No, no, no... (What would Vivi say...?)

Vivi: ?

Zidane: Just say... 'Alrighty.'

Dagger: A-Alrighty!

Zidane: You're getting the hang of it! Well... Let's go.

Zidane's group proceeds to Village of Dali.

Vivi: Gee whiz, a windmill!

Zidane: Vivi, the inn is this way!

Vivi: Aw, do we have to? ...But I wanna go see the windmill.

Zidane: I know. But lets get some rest first. We also need to decide what to do next.

Zidane's group goes in the inn. In there, Zidane saw the sleeping innkeeper.

Zidane: Sleeping on the job?

Innkeeper Hal: (woke up) Oh, I'm sorr...y.

Zidane: Hey, I know she's cute, but it's rude of you to stare.

Innkeeper Hal: Oh, I-I wasn't looking at the young lady. I was just...

The room is right over there. Make yourselves at home.

Dagger: Um...Zidane? Where will I be staying?

Zidane: In the same room. Where else?

Dagger: But, Zidane... I mustn't...

Zidane: I understand how you feel, but these country inns don't have private rooms. Get inside, everyone.

In the bedroom...

Zidane: (to Dagger) Tell me one more thing before we go to sleep. Why did you wanna leave the castle, Dagger?

Dagger: If the theater ship hadn't crashed...

Zidane: It would've arrived at the neighboring regency of Lindblum. You were gonna leave Alexandria!? I see. If you hadn't been caught, you would've reached Lindblum by now. But now... We'll have to cross South Gate on foot. Border crossing, huh?

Dagger: Zidane, please listen. There is a reason I must leave this kingdom. I cannot tell you why... But...please...

Zidane: I understand... I'll get you to Lindblum somehow.

Steiner: I've heard enough! (to Dagger) Princess, you cannot trust the words of a thief! He may expose you to even more danger, like he did in Evil Forest! I beg of you, Princess. Please return to the castle.

Zidane: I know I screwed up in Evil Forest. But there's no doubt in my mind now. I'll protect Dagger with my life!

Steiner: Don't be ridiculous! It is I who protect the princess, now and forever!

Zidane: Then tell me. How do you intend to take her back to the castle?

Steiner: I-I will think of a way...

Vivi: Zzz... Zzz...

Steiner: Master Vivi...

Zidane: He was tired. But you had to go on a tirade.

Steiner: What!?

Zidane: Let's go to sleep.

Zidane is dreaming.

Zidane: What a...beautiful voice... Who's singing...?

The next morning...

Zidane: I've never heard a song like that before... ..Was that Dagger singing? Oh, everyone's up already. I wonder where they went?

Zidane goes outside and saw Vivi.

Zidane: Hey, Vivi. What's up?

Vivi: Zidane! N-Nothing, I was just thinking.

Zidane: Ah, I see.

Vivi: ?

Zidane: You met a girl!

Vivi: No, no! Nothing like that!

Zidane: What? Don't tell me you don't like girls!

Vivi: I never really thought about stuff like...that.

Zidane: I'm always thinking about girls. I'm popular with ALL the ladies in Lindblum. Come to me if you have any girl trouble, okay?

Vivi: S-Sure. Thanks.

Zidane: Okay, then. We need to decide what to do. I'm gonna look for Dagger and Rusty. Would you mind heading back to the inn?

Vivi: Sure, I'll head back.

Zidane: So, what were you staring at?

Vivi: Nothing. But I keep hearing a sound like 'kweh.'

Zidane: That's the sound chocobos make...

Vivi:

Zidane: I'll see you back at the inn!

Vivi: Okay! What are chocobos...? Chocobos!?

Suddenly, a man abducts Vivi.

Vivi: Aaah!

The screen switches to Zidane.

Zidane: Huh? Forget Steiner. I wonder where Dagger is.

Zidane finds Dagger at the Item Shop.

Zidane: Dagger... (What's she looking at?)

Dagger: Zidane!?

Zidane: You got a fever or something? Your face is all red.

Dagger: I-It's nothing. I'm fine.

Zidane: You're acting strange...

Dagger: What?

Zidane: I get it!!! You changed the way you talk! You're doing great!

Dagger: Thanks! I did fine in the play didn't I?

Zidane: Oh yeah, I thought... You sure know how to fake it!

Dagger: Fake!? How insensitive! I love Lord Avon's plays. I've seen all of them. 'I Want to Be Your Canary' is one of my favorites. I even have all the lines memorized. I shall...I'll learn soon enough.

Zidane: Geez, you don't have to get mad. I'm sorry. We need to decide what to do from here. Will you go back to the inn?

Dagger: What about you?

Zidane: I'll head back soon.

Dagger: Alrighty. I'll catch you later.

Zidane: (Good! You sound just like a regular village girl.) (Crossing the border might not be so tough after all...)

Dagger: (to the storekeeper) Thanks. I had fun!

Dagger bows and proceeds to the inn.

Storekeeper: Bye!

Zidane moves on and yawns.

Zidane: I'll just let Steiner be and go back to the inn.

Zidane met with Dagger at the inn.

Zidane: Did you wait long? I asked Vivi to head back. He should be back soon. How do you like this village? Pretty different from the castle, I bet.

Dagger: Yes. The kids are very energetic, and there are so many things to see. I've never walked around so freely before in my life! But... Where are all the adults?

Zidane: Yeah... I used to see them tending the farm next to the village.

Dagger: But that farm is tiny.

Zidane: Yeah. There's something strange going on... We'll leave once Vivi gets back.

Dagger: But... What about Steiner?

Zidane: I have a good plan for crossing South Gate. It's gonna be easy! They're not looking for the rest of us, so we'll just hide you! Forget about Rusty. Leave everything to me!

A little later...

Zidane: ...As it turned out, it didn't matter that we snuck into their mansion. But the Kings were hiding something in their mansion... What's wrong? Am I boring you?

Dagger: Oh, no. Your story is very interesting. But I'm concerned about Vivi. Why isn't he back yet?

Zidane: You're right. He is late. I'm not worried about Steiner, but Vivi, I'm not so sure about. Let's go look for him.

Zidane and Dagger goes outside.

Zidane: Wait a minute... Last time I saw Vivi, he was standing over there.

Zidane approaches closer.

Zidane: Did I hear a chocobo? Vivi said he heard a chocobo here.

Vivi: <Sniff... Sniff...>

Zidane: Is someone crying...?

Vivi: <Sniff... Sniff...>

Zidane: It's coming from the hole... Vivi...?

Vivi: ...Zidane?

Zidane: Vivi! Where are you? Are you underground? Can you move?

Vivi: They told me to stay here...

Zidane: Are you hurt?

Vivi: No.

Zidane: Don't worry, we'll get you out. We'll hurry, so stay where you are, okay?

Vivi: ...Okay.

Zidane: (to himself) What's going on in this village...? There's gotta be a way into the underground somewhere. Let's look for one.

Dagger: Okay!

Zidane: It seems like such a quiet village...

Zidane and Dagger proceeds to the windmill. In there, they found a hatch and opened it. Inside they saw Vivi held captive by two men.

Zidane: This isn't... ...just a regular underground storage facility.

Dagger: What's going on?

Zidane: (Shhh!)

Zidane and Dagger hide.

Man: Why is it moving...? Is it true that the mayor's brother found it?

Young Man: I guess they reconciled. His brother's one of us now.

Man: ...Wasn't he on the old lady's side before?

Young Man: Oh, about abandoning the farm? He probably only said that because he was fighting with the mayor. Who cares? We need more workers anyway. Hey, let's put this in a box.

Man: I guess the guys at the castle will take care of it.

Dagger: (The castle...!?)

Young Man: Yup. We're only in charge of production.

Dagger: !

Man: Gotcha.

Dagger: (The pattern on this barrel...)

Man: Come along, now. (to Vivi) Hurry, up.

Zidane: (Vivi!) That bastard!

Dagger: (grabbing Zidane by the arms) (Zidane! Wait!)

Zidane: (Geez! Hey!)

Vivi:

The screen switches to Zidane and Dagger.

Zidane: What is it!?

Dagger: Did you see the large barrel next to the shed? I've seen the exact same pattern on some of the barrels at the castle. This place must have some kind of connection with Alexandria Castle. I must know what it is! So please... I beg of you, don't cause any trouble just yet.

Zidane: ...Alright. But I will start trouble if Vivi is in danger.
Agreed?

Dagger: Sure.

Zidane: Alright, let's go. They went further inside.

Zidane and Dagger moves on until they saw something.

Zidane: What the heck is that?

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane came back to Dagger.

Zidane: What is it?

Dagger: Someone's crying...

Vivi: <Sniff... Sniff...>

Zidane:Vivi?

Vivi: Zidane!?

Zidane: It IS you! I'll get you out! Why would they stuff you in a box?

Dagger: How could they...?

Vivi: U-Um...

Zidane: We'll talk later! Hooold on! ...It's open!

Zidane got Vivi out of the box.

Zidane: What happened?

Vivi: After you left, some men kidnapped me and brought me here. They told me to stay put. I was so scared... I didn't know what to do. They asked me, 'Why were you outside?', and then they said, 'The cargo ship isn't even here yet.' I didn't know what they were talking about, so I didn't say anything, and then they said, 'Let's put it in today's shipment.'

Dagger: And they put you in that box?

Vivi: ...Yeah.

Zidane: Well, I'm glad you're safe. Listen, Vivi. You gotta do something next time. You should try-screaming back or whatever.

Vivi: Screaming...?

Zidane: Yeah, like... 'Get off me, you scumbag!'

Dagger: (Scumbag?)

Zidane: Like that! It surprises your attacker and empowers you!

Vivi: Huh... I see.

Zidane: I need to ask you a favor, Vivi. We want to check out what's ahead. I know you might not be thrilled with the idea, but...

Vivi: ...Zidane, I wanna know more, too. Look, what is that thing?

Zidane's group saw the machine with eggs being developed.

Zidane: Alright, we'll all go together!

Zidane's group moves on and they found the area that has all the men.

Vivi: Ahhh! What's is this!?

Zidane: They're...

Zidane's group saw developed Black Mages that almost look the same as Vivi.

Zidane: Some parts are different, but... (...They look like, Vivi.)

Vivi: Wh-What is this...? Are they...dolls?

Zidane: ! (Someone's coming!) Vivi! Dagger!

Dagger: Why...? Is my mother behind this...?

Zidane: This is the only way!

Zidane hits Vivi and Dagger.

Dagger: Ahhh! What are you doing, Zidane!?

Vivi: Wh-Whoa!

Zidane grabs Dagger and Vivi and jumps to the conveyor belts.

Dagger: Ahhh! ...Murf...! !!! ...!!!

Zidane: Sorry! But stay quiet!

The young man arrived.

Young Man: Hey! Did you say something?

Worker: Nope. Not me.

Young Man: Okay. Never mind. It's almost time. Hurry it up, will ya?

Worker: I hear ya!

A box dropped.

Zidane: Whoa!

Zidane is inside the box.

Dagger: Zidane!?

Vivi: Ahhhhhh!

Dagger: Vivi!

The screen switches to Steiner.

Steiner: Pardon me! I must escort a person of high rank to the castle!
When will the cargo ship arrive?

Morrid didn't answer and went downstairs to his room. Steiner follows him.

Morrid: The smell of coffee relaxes me. How about a cup?

Steiner: Oh, thank you.

Steiner drinks the coffee.

Steiner: I am not here to drink coffee! Tell me when the cargo ship will arrive, or else the Alexandrian royal family will appropriate this

properly.

Morrid: And then what?

Steiner: I order you to tell me when the cargo ship will arrive! Tell meeeee!!!

Morrid: You're not a very creative interrogator.

Steiner: I am just trying to do what is right!

Morrid: Who decides right or wrong? You?

Steiner: Anyone can tell right from wrong.

Morrid: Ha ha ha... Still as green as a pickle.

Steiner: When will the cargo ship arrive!?

Morrid: It's already here. They should be loading it now.

Steiner: Why couldn't you tell me sooner!? Thank you!

Steiner moves on and finally saw the cargo ship (airship).

Steiner: Ah! It is indeed the cargo ship! Now I can take the princess back to the castle! Now I must think of a way to get her on the ship... Wha!? There is something coming out of the ground!

The screen switches to the men that are carrying the barrel.

Man: I wonder what they're gonna use it for? We've been making lots of 'em since they set up the factory six months ago.

Young Man: Who cares? This is a piece of cake compared to framing. Better money, too.

Man: H-Hey! Is that scary guy in armor running toward US!?

Young Man: Let's get outta here!

The men retreats, but the barrel didn't go with them. Steiner arrived near the barrel.

Steiner: This barrel... What could be inside!? What could they possibly be shipping out from this village? What the-

The barrel moved.

Steiner: Did I just see that barrel move? Let's see... (Poke it with a sword.) Hyah!

Zidane: OW! OOOOWWWWWWCH!!!

Zidane popped out of the barrel in pain.

Zidane: What did you do that for!?

Steiner: You!!!

Zidane: You almost stabbed Dagger!

Steiner: The princess!?

Zidane jumps on Steiner's head.

Steiner: Ouch!

Steiner falls down. Later, Dagger and Vivi got out of the barrel.

Steiner: Princess, what in the world is going on!? (to Zidane) You scoundrel! Is this your doing!?

Dagger: Steiner, please!

Steiner: Yes, Your Highness...

Dagger: Zidane, I don't know what to say to Vivi. I never knew anything suspicious was going on at the castle...

Zidane: We still don't know for sure. Let's stay by Vivi's side.

Steiner: (This is not the time to panic...) (I must get the princess onboard the cargo ship somehow.) (Then we can head back to Alexandria Castle.)

Zidane: Yo, Rusty, do you know where this airship's going?

Steiner:L-Lindblum. Yes, to Lindblum.

Zidane: That's convenient! Did you ask someone?

Steiner: Th-The old man in the shack told me! So it must be true!

Zidane: You're acting strange...

Steiner: Something is heading this way.

Black Waltz No. 2 arrived.

Black Waltz No. 2: Princess Garnet, the queen is waiting for you at the castle!

Zidane: You were all sent by the castle!?

Steiner: What? What are you talking about!?

Zidane: You were all unconscious from the blizzard. He said he was a Black Waltz!

Black Waltz No. 2: Are you the one who defeated No. 1? I am Black Waltz No. 2! My power, magic, and speed make me far superior to No. 1! Resistance is futile! Come, Princess. The queen awaits!

Dagger: No! I will not return to the castle.

Black Waltz No. 2: Come with me, or you'll regret it!

Steiner: Wait! I, Steiner, shall escort the princess back to the castle!

Black Waltz No. 2: Kee hee hee! You think I care? I won't let you stand in the way of my mission!

Zidane's group fights Black Waltz No. 2. After they defeat him...

Black Waltz No. 2: Wh-Why...!?

Black Waltz No. 2 died.

Dagger: Black Waltz No. 2... Did my mother really send him to capture me...?

Steiner: It can't be! There is no reason to trust the words of some bandit. He was just another criminal, scheming to use the princess for some evil deed.

Dagger: Have I not been careful enough?

Steiner: Your noble upbringing cannot be disguised so easily.

Zidane: That's not true at all. You haven't been watching. Dagger is trying really hard. You're the one with the problem! Walking around, yelling 'Princess!' everywhere... About the border crossing...

Dagger: Yes?

Zidane: Why don't we hitch a ride on this airship?

Steiner: !

Dagger: Sure, Lindblum should not be terribly far by airship! I mean... 'won't be too far.' But why don't we go get some rest before we go?

Zidane: Okay. Let's head back to the village. Vivi, you'll be safe with me.

Zidane's group goes to the inn and gets some rest. After that, they proceed to the airship.

Zidane: Wait here while I ask the people inside if we can hitch a ride.

Steiner: I-I shall go ask them!

Zidane: Oh, really. How come?

Steiner: I-It is not for your benefit! I am only doing this for the princess!

Steiner proceeds to the airship.

Dagger: Steiner... He was so adamant about going back to the castle before... .. An airship full of barrels like the ones I saw at the castle... Steiner was against going... Zidane, is this ship really headed for Lindblum?

Zidane: No. It'll probably take us straight to the Alexandria Castle.

Dagger: But why...? Didn't you just say we should get on the ship?

Zidane: Yeah, I know. Trust me!

Vivi: ...Zidane.

Zidane: What is it, Vivi?

Vivi: Those dolls they were making underground... Did you think they look like me?

Zidane: Not really. They're just dolls, Vivi. (heard the airship's propellers) It's moving. What the heck is Steiner up to? Alright, we have to get on, Dagger.

Dagger: On a ship that's not going to Lindblum!?

Zidane: I don't have time to explain. This way!

Vivi climbs up the ladder to the cargo ship.

Zidane: Hurry up!

Dagger nods "No."

Zidane: You have nothing to worry about. Hurry, before she takes off!

Dagger: But...

Zidane: I'll take you to Lindblum. I promise!

Zidane forces Dagger to move.

Dagger: Fine, I'll get on!

Zidane: It's taking off!

Zidane: (touching Dagger) Ooo, soft...

Dagger: Aaah!

We watch a movie of the cargo ship taking off to the skies.

Zidane: Come on, it's not like I did it on purpose.

Dagger: Please, enough.

Zidane: There's that royal tone in your voice again. (to Vivi) ...Are you okay, Vivi?

Vivi: Feels like I'm going to get sucked into the sky...

Dagger: Let's go inside, Vivi.

Vivi goes inside.

Dagger: I trust you, Zidane.

Dagger goes inside.

Zidane: I get the feeling she doesn't quite trust me yet... Maybe she'll reward me with a kiss or two if I try hard enough.

Dagger immediately came to Zidane.

Zidane: (Wow, already!?)

Dagger: Zidane...!

Zidane: What is it? Something wrong?

Dagger: It's Vivi...

Zidane: Vivi?

In the engine room...

Vivi: (to the Black Mage) U-Um...

Zidane: ...! Wow, they're alive, and they're moving around! So, the mages built in the village bring back the new ones?

Dagger: Oh, Vivi...

Zidane: Vivi! Vivi!!!

Vivi: Hello?

Zidane: We're you able to talk to any of them?

Vivi: No... It's like... ...they don't even... ...see me at all... I tried... ...again and again... ...but... ...they won't even turn around.

Zidane: Vivi. (to Dagger) I need to go upstairs for a little bit. I gotta turn the ship around before it reaches the castle.

Dagger:

Zidane: Keep an eye on Vivi, okay?

Zidane proceeds to the deck.

Zidane: (opening the hatch)

Zidane saw Steiner kneeling on the ground.

Steiner: How could this happen...? What am I to do...? I never expected things to go so badly... I cannot believe the ship took off without the princess! What will I say to Queen Brahne...?

Zidane: What the heck were you doing? You almost took off without us!

Steiner: That is because... this ship's crew...

Zidane: !

Steiner got up and saw Zidane.

Steiner: Why, you...! Where is the princess!?

Zidane: In the engine room.

Steiner: She is on the ship!? All is well, now. This ship is returning to the castle. You will be hanged for the kidnapping of a member of the royal family! Enjoy your freedom while you can.

Zidane proceeds to the control room.

Steiner: At last! Queen Brahne is sure to be pleased. However...the princess would have been left behind without the thief's aid. I shall petition for a life sentence on his behalf. Yes, that would be the honorable thing! But that was because the crew wouldn't listen! I must run a background check on them. Ah, yes. It is my duty as a knight! Wh-What the-

Suddenly, the cargo ship is shaking. We watch a movie of the cargo ship and Black Waltz No. 3.

Black Mage:

Steiner went in the control room. He saw Zidane turning the steering wheel.

Steiner: Y-Y-Y...

Zidane: What's wrong? Something stuck in your throat?

Black Mage:

Steiner: Y-You insolent fool! Turn the ship around!

Steiner was about to attack Zidane, but he evaded by grabbing the ceiling bar.

Steiner: Graaagh!!!

Steiner tried to attack Zidane again but Zidane leaped to the other ceiling bar with his tail.

Steiner: I will have your head for that!

Zidane: Hey, I think we upset them.

Steiner: But they didn't respond to anything until now...

Zidane and Steiner were surrounded by the Black Mages.

Steiner: You're the one who started this trouble! (to the Black Mages) I apologize! Please wait while I take this fool into custody and turn the ship around.

The Black Mages walked away.

Steiner: We-What's wrong!?

The screen switches to Dagger and Vivi. Black Waltz No. 3 arrived and tried to attack Vivi with his magic.

Vivi: No...!

Dagger: Vivi! Are you okay!?

Black Waltz No. 3: So, No. 2 was defeated by a small child! You are no match against my power! Kwahahaha! Princess, stay here while I eliminate this child!

The Black Mages approaches Black Waltz No. 3.

Black Waltz No. 3: Are you protecting him? ...Nonsense. You are no different from mindless dolls! What can you do?

Dagger moves Vivi to safety.

Black Waltz No. 3: Get out of my way! Do you dare to fight a Black Waltz? I said, get out of my way!

We watch a movie of Black Waltz No. 3 cast an explosive magic to the Black Mages and most of the Black Mages fell overboard.

Steiner: Wh-What cruelty!

Vivi: ...Aaahhh!

Vivi runs to fight.

Steiner: Master Vivi, I shall assist you!

Steiner runs to fight.

Zidane: Hey, you guys! Dagger!

Dagger: Y-Yes?

Zidane: We'll take care of the Black Waltz. You steer the ship. Things are gonna get even more dangerous from here on. It's not too late to turn back. You can go back to the castle or cross South Gate into Lindblum. It's your choice! I'll be with you either way! But try not to crash the ship!

Dagger: Be careful, Zidane!

Zidane: I'll be fine!

Zidane joined Vivi and Steiner.

Vivi: Why...? Why would you do such a thing!? Weren't they your friends!?

Black Waltz No. 3: You fool. Do I look like some lowly black mage soldier?

Steiner: Even if they weren't your allies, what you did was reprehensible!

Black Waltz No. 3: Kwahahaha! Worry not about them: many more are being produced even now!

Zidane: What are you?

Black Waltz No. 3: Ah, the princess's bodyguards have gathered! How very convenient!

Zidane: Answer me!

Black Waltz No. 3: It wouldn't do you any good if I answered, since you're all going to die! Kwahahaha! I will eliminate any who stand in my way!

Zidane, Steiner, and Vivi fight Black Waltz No. 3. After Zidane's group wins the fight...

Black Waltz No. 3: You... You scum...! I exist only to kill!

Black Waltz No. 3 got away.

Steiner: Just how many Black Waltzes do we have to fight!? This is becoming ridiculous!

Zidane: I think that was the last one.

Steiner: How do you know!? Are you...!?

Zidane: He said 'Waltz,' right? Don't you think No. 3 would be the last one?

Steiner: ?

Zidane: (I can see South Gate... She's gonna go for it!)

The screen switches to Zorn and Thorn controlling their airship.

Zorn: Did you see that?

Thorn: That, I did see!

Zorn: Our enhanced black mages!

Thorn: Our black mage enhancements!

Zorn: All defeated!

Thorn: Betrayed us, Steiner did! It is all his fault!

Zorn: Huh?

Thorn: Unstable, the ship becomes! Don't let go of the steering wheel!

Zorn: No. 3 is coming back!

Thorn: True is it!? Hurray!

Zorn: But something is wrong... It's broken!!!

Thorn: Made it's magic too powerful, we did!

Zorn: There's nothing we can do now! We shall depart!

Thorn: Depart shall we!

Zorn and Thorn: Run away!

Zorn and Thorn escaped from their airship. Black Waltz No. 3 took over

the airship.

Black Waltz No. 3: I exist only to kill! I exist only to kill! I exist only to kill! I exist only to kill...!

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Zidane: Did you see South Gate?

Dagger: Yes!

Zidane: South Gate is a huge gate built exclusively for airships, but... ..maneuvering through it could be tricky. Do you want me to do it, Dagger?

Dagger: I want to do it on my own...

Zidane: Alright... We don't have clearance. They might close the gate on us. It should be okay, though. Security was totally lax when I came through here on the theater ship. It'll be fine, Captain Dagger!

Dagger: Roger!

Zidane: (checks the engine) ...It's old, but the engine's got power.

Steiner: (suddenly came in) We must turn back!!! Princess! Please turn the ship around! The Black Waltz is heading straight toward us on an airship! He might crash into us!

Zidane: Dagger, Rusty's right! It's headed straight for us! Punch it! Go through South Gate!

Steiner: Don't be ridiculous! What if the gate closes on us!?

Zidane: There's no way we can outmaneuver him in this cargo ship! We'll slide in before the gate closes and shut him out! That's our only chance! Rusty! Turn the power up to max with that lever over there! Dagger, stay on course no matter what!

Dagger: Okay!

Zidane: I know we can make it!

We watch a movie of the cargo ship being chased by Black Waltz No. 3. Vivi fights back with his magic. Through the gate, Black Waltz No. 3 cast a spell, but he burned his airship and it got blown up. The cargo ship made it through the South Gate successfully, but the South Gate is destroyed. The cargo ship proceeds to Lindblum.

Zidane: I think we pushed it a little too hard. Why so silent, people? We made it! Come on, cheer up!

Dagger: South Gate was badly damaged... It was my fault, wasn't it...?

Zidane: Don't worry about it! They'll fix it up on no time.

Steiner: You idiot! The cargo ship was wrecked, we lost all the cargo, and South Gate was destroyed! I can't believe I played a part in this debacle!

Dagger: Steiner.

Steiner: Yes, Princess!

Dagger: I didn't mean to get you involved... But you saved us. I thank you.

Steiner: Such kind words! I am not worthy! Well, now I've made up my mind! I vow to protect you, Princess, until we return to the castle!

Zidane: How do you feel about that, Dagger? He'll follow you to the end of the world.

Dagger: It's okay, Zidane. Hey, I can see the main gate of Lindblum!

Steiner: That's Lindblum Castle!? How gigantic...!

Dagger: The city of Lindblum is inside the castle.

Zidane: (I guess Dagger and I will go our separate ways once we reach Lindblum...)

Steiner: I see...

Zidane: (Just when we were beginning to get close...)

Vivi: ...Zidane. Those...black mages and I... Are we...the same...?

Zidane:

Dagger:

Steiner: I don't understand, Master Vivi. Just what seems to be the problem...?

Vivi: ...I don't know.

Steiner: Master Vivi, why would those mages be the same as you? And why would it matter if they were...?

Zidane: Rusty's right!

Steiner: ?

Zidane: You're an individual, no matter what happens, Vivi!

Vivi: R-Right!

Zidane: Let's go out to the deck, Vivi!

Vivi: Why?

Zidane: You've gotta see Lindblum from above! It's the best! Look, the Falcon's Gate is right in front of us!

We watch a movie of the cargo ship flying into the Falcon's Gate. Zidane's group are now in Lindblum Castle.

Vivi: Wow! This castle is huge! It's even bigger than Alexandria Castle!

Zidane: Yeah. They don't call it Lindblum Grand Castle for nothing.

Steiner: An indoor airship dock! This is truly amazing...! Even Her Majesty's Red Rose would easily fit in here.

Zidane: ...Dagger, you don't look too impressed. Have you been here before?

Dagger: Yes, I came here a few times when I was little... I haven't been here since my father passed away.

The three guards arrived.

Zidane: Here comes the welcoming committee.

Elite Guard: That's a really old airship.

Dagger: Greetings. I am Princess Garnet Til Alexandros. I humbly request an audience with Regent Cid.

Elite Guard: You must be kidding! No member of the royal family, let alone a princess, would ever ride in such a shabby airship. And look at the company you're keeping.

Steiner: How dare you accuse the princess of lying!? The princess was forced to come here under extreme circumstances!

Elite Guard: Then show me some kind of proof of your royal heritage.

Dagger: Very well...

Elite Guard: This pendant... Is it a Falcon Claw!? ...No. The shape is a little different. (to the other guard) Call Minister Artania!

The two guards left.

Steiner: If you weren't such a filthy-looking oaf, they would not be so suspicious of us!

Zidane: Hey, I'm not the idiot with the loud voice, and the dirty, rusty armor.

Steiner: WHAT!!!?

Minister Artania arrived.

Minister Artania: What is going on?

Elite Guard: Sir, we have unknown visitors who wish to see the regent. And one of them is carrying a pendant that looks like a Falcon Claw.

Minister Artania: ! You are dismissed. I'll take care of this.

Elite Guard: Yes, sir!

The elite guard left.

Dagger: Uncle Artania!

Minister Artania: It's good to see you, Princess. Please follow me. The regent is waiting.

Dagger: ?

Zidane's group follows Minister Artania to the elevator lift. While going up...

Minister Artania: Lindblum Castle has three levels, all connected by this lift. From the Base Level, which lies below the Mist, you can take a trolley to the harbor and the back gate. Ships hardly arrive at the harbor anymore since travel by air has become so popular. The Mist poses great danger, so we've sealed off everything. Just above the Base Level is the Mid Level. You can ride the air cab from the Mid Level to go to town. The Upper Level contains the royal chamber and conference room. Access to that level is restricted, because the regent himself resides there.

Zidane: Hey, Dagger, what's Regent Cid like? I lived in Lindblum for a while, but I've never met him.

Dagger: Regent Cid is very wise. He always thinks ahead. He may seem a bit old at times, but he is very dependable. He and my father were best friends... ..I wonder if he will even listen to what I have to say...

Zidane: Don't worry. We're not leaving until he does.

Minister Artania: We will arrive at the Upper Level shortly.

In the throne room...

Minister Artania: Sire, Princess Garnet of Alexandria wishes to see you.

Steiner: Princess, is something wrong?

Dagger: The regent isn't here, and I don't know who... Take a look at the throne.

Steiner: ? What in the world...?

Regent Cid: <Gwok-gwok.> <Gwok-gwok!> Greetings!

Steiner: !!! OG...!!! OGLOP!!!

Steiner punched Regent Cid.

Minister Artania: Sire!

Regent Cid: What!?

Dagger: Wh...!?

Steiner: !?

Zidane: Dagger, what's wrong? Why aren't you talk to-GEEZ! That's an oglop!

Vivi: Wow... Even the oglops are big in Lindblum.

Steiner: What is the meaning of this!? How dare you greet the princess like this!? Get that repulsive bug off the throne immediately, and call the regent!

Minister Artania: Please, settle down! You ARE before the regent!

Steiner: What!? Enough of your nonsense!

Dagger: Steiner, stand down. I remember that moustache. Is that really you, Uncle Cid?

Regent Cid: Yes. Greetings, all <gwok>. I am Cid Fabool, regent of Lindblum. I knew it was you-I recognized your pendant's description; it's so much like my 'Falcon Claw.' I'm delighted to see you again, Garnet. You have truly <gwok> become a fine lady. I, on the other hand...

Minister Artania: Allow me to explain. About six months ago, someone snuck into the castle and attacked the regent in his sleep. Unfortunately, we were too late... The regent had been transformed into an oglop, and his wife, Lady Hilda, was abducted.

Dagger: My goodness...

Zidane: Whoever pulled this off had to be highly skilled, like me.

Steiner: Hmph! I'll bet it was you!

Regent Cid: That's not possible.

Zidane: How can you be so sure? Do you know who we are?

Regent Cid: Of course. I may be a bug <gwok>, but I am still the ruler of Lindblum.

Dagger: Uncle Cid, I appreciate you seeing me on such short notice. I desperately need to speak to you about my mother.

Regent Cid: That's what I figured. But I'm sure it can wait 'til tomorrow. Why don't you all get some rest for today?

Dagger: Thank you.

Minister Artania: It is time for lunch. Please follow me.

Zidane wanders around in Lindblum and saw a restaurant.

Zidane: I can't stand the food at the castle. It's way too high-class for my tastes. How can anyone get full on that stuff? The cheap food here is a lot better. Today's special is... Soup du Silence. Not bad.

Inside...

Zidane: (to Bobo) Yo, Pops. I'll have the stupid special.

Bobo: Who said that!? Zidane... I figured it was you.

Zidane: How've you been?

Bobo: Alright, I guess... Have a seat. Your soup'll be ready in a minute.

Lilian: Do you mind? You're standing in everyone's way.

Zidane: Wow... Hey.

Lilian: Yeah? Do you want to drink?

Zidane: How about you and me go for a cruise on an airship?

Lilian: Really!? An airship!?

Zidane: Sounds like you've never been on one. You know, Lindblum is quite a sight from high above.

Woman at the Counter: Hey, monkey-tail, you're disturbing the other customers.

Zidane: What the-you've got a tail, too, rat-face!

Woman at the Counter: Rat-face... After I finish my drink, I'm gonna kick your butt.

Bobo: Hey, Zidane, take it outside.

Zidane: !!!

Woman at the Counter: Long time, Zidane.

Zidane: Hey! What's up!? Wait a minute...

Woman at the Counter: You forgot my name?

Zidane: No, I remember! You're Helga, right?

Woman at the Counter: Wrong.

Zidane: ...Christine?

Woman at the Counter: No!

Zidane: ...Oh yeah! You used to live next door to me. How's it going...Ratchel? Man, you've really gotten...big.

Woman at the Counter: You nasty little-

Zidane: Come on. I'm just kiddin'. You know I never forget a pretty girl's name.

Zidane: So, how've you been, Freya?

Freya: ...Same old, Zidane.

Zidane: How long has it been?

Freya: About 3 years.

Zidane: Hey, did you ever find out anything about your boyfriend?

Freya: No...

Zidane: So... What brings you to Lindblum?

Freya: The Festival of the Hunt. What else? It's a good opportunity to test my skills.

Zidane: Oh... Well, I'm sure you'll find him someday.

Freya: Aren't you participating?

Zidane: ...Nah. I think I'll pass.

Freya: Lazy bum.

Zidane: ...Are you ever gonna go back?

Freya: I have no reason to return to Burmecia. There is nothing there for me anymore.

The next morning, we are now with Regent Cid and Dagger in the castle.

Regent Cid: So, how is the queen? Is she still as vibrant as ever?

Dagger: Yes, but... Since Father died, Mother has been acting strangely...

Regent Cid: I'm not surprised <gwok-gwok>. They loved each other so much...

Dagger: We haven't spoken much lately. Also, a suspicious man has been prowling around the castle. I don't know what's going on anymore... I fear that she might be planning something terrible. I've brought this matter to everybody's attention, but no one has taken me seriously. They all think I'm distraught over losing Father...

Regent Cid: I understand why you are so eager. I'm happy that you came to me for help. At this point, I think you're the only person Mother will listen to...

Dagger: When I heard that Lindblum's theater ship was coming to Alexandria, I decided to sneak on board and come here no matter what. I just never expected the crew to kidnap me...

Regent Cid: It was me... I was the one who ordered Tantalus to kidnap you.

Dagger: !?

Regent Cid explain everything to Dagger.

Regent Cid: I once promised father <gwok>, that should anything happen, I would protect you. We've known about the disturbances in Alexandria for some time. But had we acted directly, it would've started a war. So, I asked Baku for help. He and I go way back. The play was the perfect cover to enter Alexandria and get you out. No one would suspect Lindblum was behind it. We were <gwok> forced to take action, because we knew Alexandria would never seek our help. I'm relieved we were able to get you here.

Later...

Regent Cid: At the Village of Dali, we saw numerous black mages. They looked like golems, controlled by some powerful magic.

Dagger: On top of that, they were being created under Alexandria's supervision. I don't know how they're related to Vivi, but if Mother is planning to use them for war...

Regent Cid: We won't let that happen. Even if she were to command an army of black mages, she won't make a move as long as we have our airship fleet. Don't worry <gwok-gwok>. Everything will be fine.

Dagger: I'm so sorry, Uncle.

Regent Cid: Now, now, come on. Don't be so formal. I'm helping you because I am your Uncle Cid, not because I am the regent of Lindblum.

Dagger: Thank you so much.

Dagger follows Regent Cid to his work place.

Dagger: What is this place...?

Regent Cid: The heart and soul of Lindblum: our airship dock. This is Dock No. 1, where we conduct our research <gwok>.

Dagger: But...where are the airships?

Regent Cid: Lonely, isn't it...? We had a new airship model in here about 6 months ago. It was our latest creation: it didn't require Mist to fly.

Dagger: The man who attacked you-was he the one who ran off with it?

Regent Cid: Good guess, but no... Actually... I met am lovely lady at the pub...

Dagger: ...Um?

Regent Cid: When Hilda found out about my little affair, she used her magic and turned me into an oglop. Then she stormed off in the new airship, which I named Hilda Garde. Pretty ironic, eh? She hasn't been back since <gwok>. I've been working on Hilda Garde 2, but it hasn't been going too well. My mind just isn't the same as an oglop. I'm hopeless... But that doesn't mean I can't help you. I'll do my best for Alexandria.

Dagger: Thank you... But with South Gate badly damaged, I don't know how we can get to Alexandria...

Regent Cid: Don't worry. South Gate is being repaired as we speak. Once the repairs are finished, we'll go to Alexandria.

Dagger: Yes. I'm sure Mother will finally open her eyes to the truth.

Regent Cid:

Dagger: Uncle, is something wrong?

Regent Cid: Huh? No, I was just thinking...about how the theater ship crashed. Baku sure has good men working under him...

The screen switches to Zidane who woke up in the inn. Vivi came in to

see Zidane.

Vivi: Good morning.

Zidane: You're up early.

Vivi: Lindblum is really a busy place. I've never seen this many people before. I wonder where people go if they wanna be alone...

Zidane: Lindblum had always been like this. People come here from all over the world. Some of them come here to become airship engineers, sculptors, actors...

Vivi: Wow...

Zidane: I don't remember why I came here my first time. Before I knew it, I was living here with my Tantalus brothers.

Vivi: Do they still live here?

Zidane: Yeah. Our hideout is in the Theater District. I'm going go there right now. Do you wanna come along?

Vivi: Um, it's okay. I'm gonna go look around town.

Zidane: Okay. Then I'll give you a little tour.

Vivi: ...No, that's okay.

Zidane: Ohhh...okay... Go find yourself a cute girl, alright?

Zidane proceeds to the Theater District. Zidane saw four people waiting to see Lowell. Lowell came out with a Moogle suit and left. Zidane proceeds to Lindblum Castle and searches for Dagger. Zidane saw Steiner.

Zidane: What are you doing here?

Steiner: You! What have you done with the princess!? Where is she!?

Zidane: Whoa, take it easy. I just got here.

Steiner: The princess is gone! She was supposed to stay in this room.

Zidane: Maybe she went out for a walk.

Steiner: How can you be so calm!? This is a very serious matter! Have you forgotten all the danger she faced just to get here!? What if something terrible happens to her!? What am I doing here!? I must go find her! Out of my way!

Steiner left. Zidane moves on.

Zidane: I wonder where she went...

Zidane proceeds to the left entrance. Zidane suddenly heard a singing voice.

Zidane: That song... I've heard it somewhere before. That sweet voice... It's Dagger. She's upstairs.

Zidane tries to go to the lift, but the soldier blocked his way.

Soldier: Sorry. Only authorized personnel can use this lift.

Zidane: (to himself) Man, I've gotta get past this guy somehow. Maybe if I disguise myself as a guard, he'll let me through.

Zidane came up with a plan and talks to the sleeping guard.

Zidane: Hey, wake up!

Sleepy Soldier: ...Huh?

Zidane: I just saw a suspicious character wandering around!

Sleepy Soldier: WHAT!? Wh-Where!?

Zidane: Upstairs. Follow me.

The sleepy soldier went the wrong way.

Zidane: No! In here!

Sleepy Soldier: Huh!?

Inside Dagger's room...

Sleepy Soldier: Alright, you bastard! Show yourself! (hit by Zidane)
Hey, what are you doing!?

Zidane disguise himself as a guard and stuffed the sleepy soldier in the cabinet.

Zidane: That was easy. I should be able to get on the lift now.

Zidane proceeds to the top floor. We watch a movie of Zidane approaching Dagger who is singing. The birds flew away.

Zidane: Nice song.

Dagger: How did you get up here? This is a restricted area.

Zidane: Come on, I do this for a living.

Dagger: ...Oh yeah. You're a member of Tantalus. It must've been easy for you.

Zidane: ...? Whew... What a view... Hey! There's a telescope. Let's go check it out. Come on.

Zidane and Dagger approaches the telescope.

Zidane: Hmm...

Zidane is finished with the telescope after he looked at everything.
Dagger looks in the telescope.

Zidane: How's the view?

Dagger: (...I've made so much trouble for everyone...) (Uncle Cid knew everything...) (That's why he asked Tantalus to get me out of Alexandria.) (No matter how hard I try, I'm always a step behind in everything...) (I'm so helpless...)

Zidane: ...What's wrong?

Dagger: Zidane... Why did you help me come here-to Lindblum? ...Is it because your boss ordered you to?

Zidane: I just wanted to help you. That's all. The boss didn't agree with me... ...so I ended up leaving the band.

Dagger: Really!? I'm sorry.

Zidane: Don't worry about it. It isn't the first time I've left.

Dagger: Zidane...

Zidane: Yeah?

Dagger: Oh...um... How were you planning to abduct me?

Zidane: We were gonna put you to sleep with sleeping weed, then kidnap you. It's mostly used for kids, but a big dose can knock out an adult just as easily.

Dagger: I guess you didn't need it, since I came along on my own. Hey... Would you mind giving me some? I've had a hard time sleeping lately.

Zidane: Um, I don't think that's a good idea. You might get addicted. Maybe all you need is some company, eh?

Dagger: Oh, please. Do you think I'm that naive?

Zidane: Heh, heh. Can't blame me for trying.

Dagger:

Zidane: U-Um... Th-That song... Were you singing it in the village of Dali?

Dagger: ...Yes. So, you were up that night...

Zidane: What is that song, anyway?

Dagger: ...I don't know. I can't even remember where I learned it. I sing it whenever I feel sad or lonely... For some reason, it comforts me and remind me that I'm not alone.

Zidane: I guess it's a mystical song... Let me hear it again.

Dagger began singing for Zidane. The screen switches to Steiner in the Weapon Shop.

Steiner: Hmm... I never expected to find such fine armor in a place like this.

Customer: (to the Storekeeper) Yes, I'll buy that one, too. Who knows when that Brahne will start another war...

Steiner: WHAT!? The queen would never start a war! You dare speak ill of a queen!?

Customer: Who the hell are you?

Steiner: I'm a.....an armor collector!

Customer: Oh. Well, in that case, can you recommend some good armor?

Steiner: I...I must go!

The screen switches to the kids with the action figures.

Phillipo: Go, Knights of Pluto! Yeah!!!

Poncho: What are those things? They look so stupid. I'm gonna take Cid's airships and destroy them.

Phillipo: HEY, cut it out! YOU BROKE MY KNIGHT! I'm gonna go tell your mom!!!

Poncho: No, come on!!!

Phillipo and Poncho left them scene. Vivi arrived.

Vivi: 'Royal Action Figures'...? Those black mages were like toys... being controlled by someone...

The screen switches to Freya, leaping off buildings.

Freya: The sky looks ominous... Something's about to happen. Sir Fratley, where are you? I need you...

The screen switches to Regent Cid.

Regent Cid: Okay! It should work now.

Engineer Zebolt: Sire, it's no good.

Regent Cid: What!?

Engineer Zebolt: We can't stabilize the engine system. It can't run for more than 10 minutes.

Regent Cid: Darn it... My mind hasn't been the same since I became an oglop...

The screen switches to Zidane and Dagger.

Zidane: Hey, Dagger. So, when do you wanna go on that airship cruise?

Dagger: What are you talking about?

Zidane: ...!? (What am I thinking!? I asked the girl at the...) never mind.

Dagger: Well...it sounds like you've asked the wrong girl.

Zidane: Wait. I-I can explain.

Dagger: Why bother? Go have a wonderful time.

Zidane: Oh, man...

Zidane leaps on top of the ledge.

Zidane: Okay, how about this? If I get first place in tomorrow's hunting festival, you and me'll go out on a date!

Dagger: How does that have anything to do with me?

Zidane is about to fall, but he caught himself.

Zidane: Come on. Pleaaase.

Dagger: ...Fine.

Zidane: Okay, it's a date!

Zidane left.

Dagger:

Meanwhile in the town...

Officer: It may be a tradition, but this is a dreadful festival. So many lives lost every year, especially because of him...

Captain: Hardly. The festival is a test of manhood. I tingle with excitement every year.

Soldier: This is the first carriage. All the preparations for the Festival of the Hunt are complete.

Officer: Very good. Now we wait for the signal.

Captain: Yes, sir.

Officer: Whoa!

Fangs came out of the carriage.

Captain:

Meanwhile in the other side of the town...

Soldier: The fangs have been freed.

Officer: What!? We haven't even received the minister's authorization! We believe that they're going to release 'him' any minute. Alright, release the mus before they let him loose. Hurry!

The soldier released the Mus from the gate. In the large gate area...

Soldier 1: All is ready!

Soldier 2: Alright. Standby!

Breeder: This year's specimen is perfect. Nothing can stop him!

The gate is being hit by a monster.

Breeder: Ha ha ha! What power!

Soldier: Hey, make him stop! It's too early to let him loose!

Breeder: How? I have no control over him.

Soldier: Dammit! (to the other soldier) Open the gate at once! The gate's gonna fall apart!

The gate opened.

Breeder: GO, ZAGHNOL!

The screen switches to Dagger's room with Zidane's crew.

Vivi: (Where's Zidane...?)

Steiner: (to Dagger) Please, Princess. You might actually enjoy it.

Dagger: Okay...

Freya: (I wonder if Zidane has improved his skills...)

Zidane arrived.

Zidane: Hey, guys. Sorry I'm late.

Elite Guard: Alright, let's begin.

The guard gave everyone a message.

= Festival of the Hunt =

Hunters, on your mark! Ferocious beasts swarm about the castle town!
The bigger the catch, the higher the score!

= Festival of the Hunt =

The time limit is 12 minutes. Use air cabs to go to other districts.
Once you lose in a battle, you will be forced to retire. The winner
will be crowned Master Hunter and receive the hunter's reward. Who will
come out on top!?

Elite Guard: What do you wish for your hunter's reward?

Zidane: I'll go with Gil all the way!

Freya: I'll take an Add-on.

Elite Guard: And you, Mr. Vivi?

Vivi: WHAT!? I never signed up!

Zidane: I thought you would do pretty well, so I signed you up. Don't
worry. With your black magic, it'll be a piece of cake.

Vivi: I...I don't know...

Freya: That was very inconsiderate of you, Zidane.

Zidane: Oh! (to Vivi) (How about this? If you win, I'll fix you up for a date with Dagger.)

Vivi: Me and the princess!?

Zidane: (SHHH! Keep it down!)

Steiner: What was that!? You just mentioned the princess. What evil deeds are you plotting now!?

Zidane: It's nothing, right, Vivi?

Vivi: Y-Yeah.

Elite Guard: So, what would you like for your reward?

Vivi: Oh, um... I'll take a Card.

Elite Guard: Okay. Gil, Add-on, and...a Card. The festival will begin shortly. You all have different starting points. Hunter Zidane will start in the Theater District, Hunter Freya will start in the Industrial District, and Hunter Vivi will start in the Business District.

Zidane moves on to his starting point. The screen switches to Dagger and Steiner.

Steiner: Such rudeness! Princess, they are treating you like a commoner!

Dagger: Oh, hush. We get a great view from here.

Steiner: Hmm, you're right. I can see the entire town. Princess, look! Mast Vivi is also participating!

Dagger: I can't believe it. He seemed reluctant earlier.

Steiner: MASTER VIVI! THE PRINCESS AND I ARE ROOTING FOR YOU!!!

Dagger: COME ON, VIVI!!! YOU CAN DO IT!

Steiner: No! Master Vivi!

Dagger: Look out! Oh, gosh! I can't watch anymore!

Steiner: YOU CAN'T WIN JUST BY RUNNING! A GOOD OFFENSE IS THE BEST DEFENSE! ATTACK! You can't lose to that monkey Zidane! YES! THAT'S IT! NOW'S YOUR CHANCE! ONE MORE TIME! VIVI, BEHIND YOU! YES! GO!

Zidane begins the festival. Zidane later wins the festival. Later in the throne room...

Regent Cid: That was marvelous! All of you!

Minister Artania: (to Zidane) 257 points! Congratulations!

Regent Cid: We grant you the 'Master Hunter' and your reward.

Minister Artania gave Zidane 5000 Gil and Master Hunter.

Vivi: Congratulations, Zidane!

Zidane: Thanks!

Burmecian Soldier: Regent... Please forgive my intrusion... I bring urgent news... from our king.

Regent Cid: The king of Burmecia?

Minister Artania: (Sire, you must not let him see you like this!)

Regent Cid: (Take a good look at him. An injury has blinded him.)
Continue.

Burmecian Soldier: Our kingdom is being attacked by some unknown force!
We are severely outmatched! Please send reinforcements immediately!

Regent Cid: !!!

Burmecian Soldier: The enemy looks like an army of mages
wearing...steeple-crowned hats.

Regent Cid: The king and I are old friends. We will send reinforcements
to Burmecia immediately.

Burmecian Soldier: Thank you, Regent! The king...and all of Burmecia will
be most grateful! I must...return now... ..Ugh.

The Burmecian soldier died.

Regent Cid: Take him to the infirmary!

Freya: It's too late. He's gone... It's a miracle he even made it this
far. I can't believe this is happening...

Later...

Minister Artania: This is a problem... Because of the festival, there are
hardly any men left in the castle. It will take time to mobilize.

Regent Cid: We have no choice... Call back the 4th aerial division
patrolling the border.

Minister Artania: But if we recall the 4th, we will lose our eyes over
Alexandria.

Regent Cid: <Gwok-gwok> Burmecia is our ally. We must help them.

Freya: Steeple-crowned hats... They might be back mages, like Vivi.

Vivi: It can't be...

Dagger: Could it be Mother...!?

Freya: I must go now. I cannot sit and wait for the reinforcements.

Zidane: I'm coming with you.

Freya: No. This doesn't concern you.

Zidane: What's this, I'm a stranger all of a sudden!? I'm not gonna sit back and watch you home get destroyed, alright?

Freya: ...Thank you, Zidane.

Vivi: Um, c-can I come, too? I wanna find out who they really are.

Zidane: Sure.

Dagger: Alright then. Let's go to Burmecia.

Steiner: Princess! This is a foreign matter! It has nothing to do with us!

Regent Cid: Steiner is right. We don't know if Alexandria is involved.

Dagger: But if black mages are involved... Zidane, you know what I'm talking about.

Zidane:

Dagger: If Mother is behind this, I'll make her stop! I promise!

Zidane: ...I think you should stay here.

Dagger: What!?

Zidane: We don't know what to expect there.

Dagger: I've already faced great danger coming here! What's the difference!?

Zidane: Dagger, this is war. A lot of people are gonna die.

Dagger: I know that!

Zidane: ...How did you feel when you saw that Burmecian soldier die, just now?

Dagger: ...I felt sad, of course.

Zidane: Just sad? Weren't you scared, too? Obviously, you haven't realized how dangerous it's gonna be... You could get killed. This is no time to be talking about convincing your mother of anything.

Dagger: But...

Regent Cid: Now's not the time to argue.

Freya: He's right. We must head to Burmecia at once. Will you open the Dragon's Gate?

Regent Cid: Of course. If you're going by foot, leaving from that gate is the best way. Let us eat while we <gwok> wait for the gate to open.

Later in the dining room...

Vivi: Yay! I'm so hungry!

Regent Cid: The Festival of the Hunt feast is one of our oldest traditions. It began well over five centuries ago. It is customary to eat everything with your hands, so go on, before it gets cold.

Dagger: Thank you, Uncle.

Zidane's group began eating.

Vivi: Mmmm! It's so good!

Freya:

Zidane: Let's just eat. We can't do anything until the gate opens.

Freya: You're right.

Zidane: Hey, not bad!

Steiner: This is wonderful! Princess, how is everything? Why aren't you eating?

Dagger: Oh... I'm sorry. You're right. Everything is so delicious.

Steiner: Indeed, it is. Especially this beef. It is superb!

Vivi: Oh, I'm so full. I'm getting sleepy now.

Vivi and Freya fell asleep.

Steiner: What the-THE FOOD IS POISONED!

Zidane: Dagger...?

Zidane fell asleep.

Steiner: How could I be so careless!!!? Ugh... I'm starting to feel sick... F-Forgive me, Princess. I should have tasted it for poison...

Dagger: That's impossible. There should be any in your dish.

Steiner: What...? Now that you mention it, I feel just fine. !!! How did you know!? Princess! You didn't!

Dagger: It's not poison. It's just a medicinal herb Zidane gave me. Believe me, this was not what I had planned. Steiner, I have to make my own decisions... I had no choice. Uncle Cid would never let me leave the castle.

Steiner: That is because he is concerned about you!

Dagger: I understand, but-

Steiner: No, you don't understand...! War is a terrible thing! You must never experience it as I have. I'm sorry, Princess. I cannot follow any orders that might put your life in danger.

Dagger: ...What if Alexandria is behind the attack on Burmecia? It could lead to war between the three great nations. Many innocent people will die... As the princess of Alexandria, there must be something I can do. I have to help Mother... I don't want to see anything happen to her...

Steiner:Very well. Princess, I will follow you wherever you choose.

Dagger: Thank you. Let's go before everyone wakes up. (to Zidane sleeping) I'm sorry, Zidane. (to Steiner) Come on.

Dagger and Steiner left. Later...

Zidane: Dagger... Where are you going...?

Zidane's group got up.

Freya: It must've been some sort of sleeping medicine.

Zidane: It was sleeping weed.

Regent Cid: We've been had...

Zidane: I gave her some because she said she was having problems sleeping.

Freya: I'm impressed. There's more to her than meets the eye.

Zidane: Damn, what the heck is she thinking!? Maybe she's heading to Burmecia.

Regent Cid: Then you might still be able to catch up with her.

Zidane: Vivi, wake up! We're going to Burmecia!

Freya: Let's head for the Gizamaluke's Grotto. Once we pass through the grotto, we will be in Burmecia.

Regent Cid: You can leave from the Dragon's Gate, located on the Base Level <gwok>.

Zidane's group proceeds outside. First they decided to go to Qu's Marsh. There they saw a Qu. The Qu told Zidane's group s/he's hungry. Zidane's group finds a frog. Then, they talk to the Qu.

Qu: You got frog! Frogs very good! Mmmm!

Zidane: Who the heck are you?

Qu: Me? Quina.

Zidane: Quina, do you want this frog?

Quina: Yes, yes! Yes, yes!

Zidane: ...Alright. Here.

Quina: Yaaay!

Quina got a frog.

Quina: Mine, mine!

Quale: You pathetic, Quina. Can't even feed yourself.

Later in Quale's hut...

Quale: Can't master art of eating just chasing frogs, Quina.

Quina: But, Master, frogs very good! Frogs here best! Better than Alexandria's.

Quale: Quina, you in darkness. Need some light. World big place. Many many foods. Alexandria just one kingdom. You need go out more, eat other food.

Quina: Go out into world...? Sound scary. Are there yummiier frogs outside?

Quale: Of course! Many good frogs! All Qus love frogs best. Eating frogs is key to growth. Qu marshes exist all over world. Go eat frogs in other marshes. I promise you get much learning. Traveler, please show Quina the world. Anywhere with food good.

Zidane: You want me to take him with us? (Why not.)

Quina: Will I find yummiier frogs outside?

Zidane: There is plenty of stuff in the world that tastes better than frogs.

Quina: Really really!?! Okay, I go with you!

Zidane:

Quale:

Outside...

Vivi:

Zidane: What's up, Vivi?

Vivi: Um... That man looks exactly like my grandpa.

Zidane: Your grandfather? Who, that Quale guy?

Vivi: Yeah... Maybe he knows my grandpa. I'm gonna go talk to him, Zidane.

Vivi talks to Quale.

Quale: What wrong? Something on my face?

Vivi: Um... Do you know a man named Quan?

Quale: ! ...I not know that bigot!

Vivi: Grandpa Quan was a bit strange, but... How do you know him?

Quale: I-I no can answer.

Vivi: Grandpa Quan looks exactly like you, Mr. Quale...

Quale: Of course. We from same tribe.

Vivi:

Zidane: You really don't know him?

Quale: No! I not know this Quan!

Zidane: Honestly...? That's too bad... Let's go, Vivi.

Vivi: Okay...

Zidane's group moves on to Gizamaluke's Grotto.

Freya: No...!

Freya saw two dead Burmecian guards.

Freya: Come on! Get up! (to the other dead guard) Dammit! Say something!

Zidane: Oh, man...

Freya: The black mages! Who are they!?

Vivi: U-Um...

Zidane: It's okay. You didn't do anything.

Freya: Vivi, aren't they your-- !!! The king might be in danger! Come on!

Freya moves on.

Zidane: I sure hope Dagger didn't come here... Let's go.

Zidane's group moves on until they were stopped by Zorn and Thorn.

Zorn: Who is that?

Thorn: That, I don't know.

Zorn: I know I have seen him somewhere before.

Thorn: Somewhere before? I have not seen him. I know.

Zorn: I guess it is not important. Let's kill him.

Thorn: Yes, kill him, shall we?

The Black Mages fight Zidane's group instead. After Zidane's group defeated the Black Mages...

Thorn: HEEE! Savage monsters, they are!

Zorn: Run away!

Zorn and Thorn ran away. Zidane's group moves on and they finally reached another seriously wounded guard near the water area.

Freya: Are you alright!?

Burmecian Soldier: Freya... Please be careful... Master Gizamaluke has gone mad. He's being controlled by some strange clowns.

Suddenly, Gizamaluke appeared. Zidane's group fights Gizamaluke. After Zidane's group defeated it...

Freya: What happened to Master Gizamaluke...? We must hurry! His Majesty is in danger!

The screen switches to Steiner and Dagger inside the bag with a stick that Steiner is holding in Grand Citadel South Gate.

Steiner: (Once we cross this gate, we are in Alexandrian territory!)

Steiner approaches the gate. But the guards blocked his way.

Short Guard: Hold it right there.

Tall Guard: What is the purpose of your visit?

Steiner: I heard workers were needed to fix South Gate. I brought my belongings so that I might live and work here.

Tall Guard: That's great! They've been working on the gate non-stop since the accident, but it's still broken.

Short Guard: I need to check your bag. Rules and regulations, you know.

Steiner:

Steiner puts the bag down.

Short Guard: Would you step back?

Tall Guard: There, that's good. Sorry, just doing our job. So... Where are you from?

Steiner: (Blast, I must do something!)

Tall Guard: The police are searching for a girl and a middle-aged man. Did you see a pair like that on your way here?

Short Guard: This knot is really tight...

Tall Guard: The girl supposedly looks exactly like Princess Garnet, the most beautiful princess ever to grace Alexandria Castle.

Short Guard: I got it now.

Tall Guard: But you know how Queen Brahne looks. It's hard to believe that she'd have such a beautiful daughter.

Short Guard: Ungh!? WHAT IS THIS!? Wh-What is that!? What are those...those... ..rotten things! Are they poison!?

Steiner: Rotten? I'm not carrying anything that's rotting...

Tall Guard: Oh, it's your least favorite food... ..the Lindblum delicacy,

gysahl pickles. I can't believe how many you brought with you!

Steiner: They are my favorite! I cannot start the day without them.

Tall Guard: Yeah, sure. People who like 'em all say that. You can go now.

Steiner: Thank you.

Steiner picks up the bag.

Steiner: Good day.

Steiner moves on.

Steiner: (We're inside the gate! Princess, you've done it again.) (I must find a spot where I won't be seen...) (The alley looks acceptable.) (But a girl and a man are in a way.)

Steiner talks to one woman and a man and they move somewhere away from the alley. Steiner moves on, but he was stopped by a guard. The guard tells him to come over here and after the guard checks on Steiner, the guard puts down a Gate Pass on the ground. Steiner picked up the Gate Pass. Steiner moves on. In the alley, Steiner puts down the bag.

Steiner: Ahem... 'Tis foolishness! If all were so easy, why, none would suffer in this world!

Dagger: Steiner...? Is it okay for me to come out?

Steiner: Yes!

Dagger: Thank you. I will come out now. Please keep an eye out.

Steiner: Yes!

Dagger got herself out of the bag.

Dagger: Oh, finally! Some fresh air! What a horrible smell... It gave me a terrible headache. (Maybe I'll get changed while he's on look out.)

Steiner: Let's see...

Dagger finished changing.

Dagger: You can turn around, Steiner.

Steiner: Princess...!

Dagger: Steiner!

Steiner: Yes...? Oh, um, yes, Miss Dagger.

Dagger: You have to call me Dagger until we reach Treno. Don't salute me, either.

Steiner: Yes, until we reach Treno and find a way back to the castle, I will be careful.

Dagger: Okay, let's go!

Moving on...

Dagger: Wow...! That cable car will take us to the summit. We're almost there, Steiner. Alexandria is just beyond the summit, right? I managed it without Zidane's help...!

Steiner: You never needed him to begin with, Princess.

Dagger:

Dagger and Steiner talks to the conductor.

Conductor: Will you be boarding Berkmea?

Dagger: Board.

Conductor: May I see your Gate Pass?

Dagger: Okay!

Dagger showed the conductor the gate pass.

Conductor: Yup. That's the one. We can depart right away, if you want.

Dagger: Depart.

Conductor: Alright, then. Please go inside. We'll be departing shortly.

Dagger finds a seat.

Dagger: Let's sit here.

Conductor: Please wait while I prepare for departure.

Part-time Worker Mary: Wait! Wait for me! <Pant, pant...> I made it! (to Steiner) Thank you for your kind words earlier.

Steiner: No, I thank you.

Part-time Worker Mary: ?

Conductor: Now departing!

The cable car is moving.

Dagger: Phew... I feel more relaxed now.

Steiner: That is understandable. Our journey from Lindblum was very tough. But... ..it was your white magic that helped me through the battles against all those monsters... ..your fortitude that got us past the obnoxious moogles in Chocobo's Forest... ..and finally, your idea to use gysahl pickles to get past the South Gate guards! I am thoroughly impressed by your intelligence and courage, Princess!

Dagger: Steiner, you can't call me that.

Steiner: My apologies. I'm just not used to...

Dagger: It's okay. I made lots of mistakes when Zidane taught me how to

talk like this.

Steiner: That peasant had no manners whatsoever! Although...he did have some wit for a bumpkin, but... The way he spoke to you was simply unacceptable! I say good riddance.

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Freya: (to the wounded soldier) Can you stand up?

Burmecian Soldier: (dying) Don't worry... about me... Please... protect Bur...me...

The soldier died.

Freya: I will protect Burmecia. You have my word.

Zidane's group moves on. In Burmecia...

Zidane: So...this is Freya's home... What are you doing? Get over here.

Freya: It's been five years... I've been away for so long. Not a night went by when I didn't dream about home. I can't believe I'm here... I am no longer the selfish child I was five years ago. The time has come to serve my kingdom as a Burmecian dragon knight once again!

Zidane: I'll do what I can to help!

Vivi: Me, too!

Quina: I help, too!

Zidane: Let's go.

Freya: What can I do for my kingdom? This is not the time.

Zidane's group moves on. They saw Zorn and Thorn.

Zorn: It is them again!

Thorn: Most persistent, they are!

Zorn: Black mages!

Thorn: Black mages!

Black Mage 1: KILL!

Black Mage 2: KILL!

Zidane's group fights the Black Mages. After defeating them...

Zorn: The general will punish you for this!

Thorn: Yes! Very scary, it is, when the general gets mad!

Zidane's group moves on. In the stairway...

Freya: Zidane... Burmecia's royal palace is beyond these steps. It must be in ruins, just like everything else. I can't bear to see it like

that...

Zidane: I understand, but we can't go back now. We have to find out who's behind this.

Vivi: ...I wanna find out who those guys were...and why I look like them.

Zidane: Look, Vivi's scared, too. But we have to face reality.

Vivi: Come on, Freya. It'll be okay...

Freya: Vivi... Do you really know what you're doing? The answer you seek may forever change your life for the worse.

Vivi: Um..... Y-Yeah... But... But I have to... I have to find out who I am... I'm scared... What if I'm not even human...?

Freya: Vivi...

Quina: What you talking about? I not human, but you definitely human!

Zidane: Someone's coming!

The Burmecian citizens ran for their lives.

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Who are you!? Are you in league with the black mages!?

Zidane: No!

Burmecian Soldier Dan: You're lying! There's a black mage right behind you!

Vivi: No! I didn't do anything! I would never hurt anyone!

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Lies!

Freya: He's telling the truth!

Burmecian Soldier Dan: ...Freya!?

Freya: It's good to see you, Dan.

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Damn, I haven't seen you in years! Where've you been!? Actually, this isn't the best time to talk! We've gotta get out of here fast. There are black mages swarming all over this place.

Dan's family ran, but Dan came back to talk to Freya.

Burmecian Soldier Dan: What are you waiting for!?

Freya: Where is the king?

Burmecian Soldier Dan: I don't know. I didn't see him in the palace. Well, I'm going. I've got my own family to worry about. Freya, forget about the king and get out of here! We're no match for those black mages!

Dan left.

Freya: I will protect my home and my king at any cost. Let's go to the palace.

Zidane's group moves on. They still see more citizens of Burmecia.

Wei: Come on, dear! We have to go now!

Kal: I can't move anymore. Go on without me...

Wei: No! I can't do that! Remember that promise we made each other in front of Master Gizamaluke?

Kal: How could I forget... But my only wish now is for you and our child to survive. Please bear a healthy child, darling. Raise him to be strong.

Wei: Oh, Kal!

Zidane: It's too dangerous to stay here. You have to escape to Lindblum. I'm sure Regent Cid will protect you.

Wei: But my husband... He was hurt by those black mages. He can't move. How can we possibly escape to Lindblum!?

Suddenly, the statue is shaking and about to collapse.

Zidane: LOOK OUT!

Zidane moved Kal to safety and the statue collapsed.

Zidane: Whew! That was close!

Kal: Geez... Thanks.

Wei: Thank you.

Gray: Wei! Kal! Are you alright!?

Kal: Yeah, we survived, somehow. Can you give me a hand?

Gray: Sure.

Kal: (to Zidane) Thanks again, pal. Maybe I'll see you again in Lindblum. By then, my kids'll be born. You definitely have to come and see them.

Zidane: I'm looking forward to it. Take care.

Zidane's group moves on. They finally reached the castle walls.

Zidane: Geez, this is terrible... Freya, I'm sorry, but from the looks of this, I don't think the king made it. (Leave her alone.) (to Vivi) Vivi, let's go see what's over there.

Freya: !!!

Freya leaped up to a higher level.

Zidane: Freya!

Freya: There's someone inside the palace! What are you waiting for? Get up here.

Zidane: You make it sound so easy... I guess I'll start here.

Zidane jumps up a ledge.

Zidane: Come on.

Vivi: Um...okay.

Vivi jumped up but fell.

Zidane: Oh, man. I'm gonna go on ahead. Try to find a way up here. I'll meet you up top.

Quina: I meet you after I eat food inside palace!

Zidane caught up with Freya. They saw Queen Brahne and Beatrix.

Zidane: Who is that?

Zidane and Freya take their hiding place.

Freya: I knew she was behind all this.

Zidane: What do you mean, you knew?

Freya: I decided to return to Burmecia because I heard rumors that Brahne had set her sights on our kingdom.

Zidane: Then that girl standing next to her must be Beatrix, Alexandria's general.

Freya: That's Beatrix? The cold-blooded knight who knows no mercy. Beatrix... Beatrix? Yes... Beatrix. I heard there are many fierce warriors out in the world-some more powerful than even I... ..Beatrix of Alexandria, in particular. They say her swordsmanship is the best in the land.

In Freya's memory.

Freya: Sir Fratley, do you still insist on going on your journey?

Fratley: Yes... Please understand, Freya. Right now, Burmecia is at peace, while other nations are slowly but surely gaining power. I don't even know if my spear alone is enough to protect Burmecia... ..which is precisely why I must go out into the world.

Freya: Sir Fratley...I don't think I can live on my own-not without you.

Fratley: Freya, you're going to be fine. Trust your strength... and have faith in your destiny. Once I complete my journey around the world, I will return to Burmecia.

Freya: Then promise me, one more time, that you will return.

Fratley: I promise.

The memory ended.

Freya: Fratley... You never came back... You've left me with nothing except rumors of your death. I couldn't believe it! I still won't believe it! Never. Not until I witness proof of your death with my own eyes. And I will travel across the world forever if I must...

Zidane: Are you alright?

Freya: Yes. I was just thinking... about the past...

Zidane: ...You still can't get over him, huh? (saw a mystery man) Who is that?

The screen switches to Queen Brahne, Beatrix, and a mystery man.

Mystery Man: I find this rain quite pleasant... It feels as though the raindrops are blessing our victory...

Brahne: This is great victory for us. Kuja, your black mages made this conquest so simple. My only concern now is finding the king of Burmecia. We must take care of him once and for all, and prevent these rats from ever rising up again. (to Beatrix) Beatrix, what's taking so long!?

Beatrix: I don't know, Your Majesty. I've ordered Zorn and Thorn to search the perimeter, but there's been no word so far. I will join them and lead the search right away.

Kuja: You're wasting your time.

Beatrix: What?

Kuja: Rats often look for new homes when they sense an earthquake. They probably moved to the sandy tree house by now... So, you see, it's too late. The king has already turned tail and fled.

Brahne: Sandy tree house... Surely, you don't mean Cleyra!? It'll be quite difficult if they escaped to Cleyra.

Beatrix: Cleyra... Unless we can get through that sandstorm, it will be impossible to attack them.

Brahne: Sneaky, little rats! Kuja, what do you think? Surely, with your powers, there must be something you can do.

Kuja: Of course, Your Majesty. I will present you a marvelous display of my power. I am certain that you will be most pleased. (to Beatrix) I was wondering if you would gather your troops near Cleyra. I'm certain those filthy rats will retaliate in full force, and my black mages may not be enough.

The screen switches to Zidane and Freya.

Zidane: Sounds like we got trouble.

Freya: That sinister man... Who is he...?

Zidane: Beats me... I've never seen him before. Well, it sounds like they're going to Cleyra. I've always wondered why people call it the

'City of Illusion.'

Freya: I don't know, either. Cleyra has remained in isolation for a hundred years. If my people escaped to there, they'll be safe, at least for a while.

Zidane: What is this place like?

Freya: The people of Cleyra are originally from Burmecia. Long ago, they severed ties with Burmecia over a trivial conflict. Now the kingdom is at peace, shielded by a large sandstorm.

Zidane: Look, there's someone else coming!

Freya: What is he thinking!?

Zidane: Geez, he's gonna get killed!

A Burmecian soldier approaches Beatrix to duel.

Burmecian Soldier: Burmecia will never fall! Prepare to die!!!

Beatrix: You wish to fight me, Beatrix of Alexandria?

Burmecian Soldier: B-Beatrix!?

Beatrix: I commend your courage, but I will show you no mercy.

Zidane's group arrived at the scene.

Zidane: Hold it!

Freya: You'll have to deal with us, first!

The soldier ran to Zidane's group.

Freya: We'll take care of this. Go find the king. Protect him with your life.

Burmecian Soldier: ...Thank you, Freya.

The soldier left.

Beatrix: Ha ha ha. I've never been so humiliated in my life. I once killed a hundred knights single-handedly... To me, you two are nothing more than insects.

Zidane's group fights Beatrix.

Beatrix: You're no match for me!

Beatrix performs her Stock Break move and seriously injuring Zidane's group.

Beatrix: Ignorant fools.

After the fight...

Beatrix: How ridiculously weak... Isn't there anyone who is worthy of facing me?

Brahne: Come, Beatrix. We must prepare to attack Cleyra.

Beatrix: Yes, Your Majesty.

Brahne and Beatrix left.

Kuja: Now, what do we have here...? Another filthy rat, and... Hmm... This boy could become a problem...

We watch a movie of Kuja getting away with his white dragon in a rainy day.

END OF DISC 1

Meanwhile in the Grand Citadel South Gate...

Tall Guard: There's been a lot of trouble lately.

Short Guard: Oh, you mean about Burmecia? I heard they were attacked by an army of soldiers wearing pointy hats. I wanna go fight on the frontline. Instead, I'm rotting away in this stinkin' place.

Tall Guard: Really? I don't like wars. Why would someone start a war...? That guy who passed through here with a huge bag... Did he look suspicious to you?

Short Guard: No... I don't think so.

Tall Guard: But weren't you the one who thought he was suspicious?

Short Guard: You know me! I'm always like that. I'm telling you, people who eat pickles are nice people. I envy him. Gysahl pickles are the only pickles I can't eat.

Tall Guard: ...You're really confusing, you know that?

Short Guard: I know... Why do you think I ended up here?

The screen switches to the cable car with Steiner and Dagger.

Steiner: The conductor said we'll be arriving at the Summit Station soon. Prin... Ahem, Miss Dagger?

Dagger is asleep.

Steiner: She's sleeping... (The princess believes what she heard about Queen Brahne.) (Queen Brahne would never start a war... It's all a misunderstanding. She will see that when she talks to the queen.) (...I need not concern myself with such matters. My only mission is to protect the princess.)

Conductor: Summit Station! Summit Station!

The cable car stopped at Summit Station. Dagger and Steiner got out of the cable car.

Dagger: Thank you very much.

Conductor: Take care. You'll have to wait a while until the car to

Alexandria arrives.

Dagger: How long will it be?

Conductor: It arrives when this car returns to Bohdan Station, so...
...about as long as you just spent in the car. Why don't you go wait in
the rest area up ahead?

Dagger: Okay. What's wrong, Steiner?

Steiner: P-Princess...

Dagger: Hey, what did I say about-

Steiner: It's Alexandria! We're finally home!

Dagger: Really...? We're home...! But I still can't see the castle.

Steiner: Princess, Alexandria may only mean the castle to you, but...

Dagger: Hey, are you making fun of me for being naive?

Steiner: N-No, I'm not...

Dagger: It's okay. Let's go.

In the rest area...

Dagger: This must be the rest area.

Steiner: Let us gather information while we wait for the car to
Alexandria!

Dagger talks to the attendant.

Attendant: The car to Alexandria will be arriving shortly.

Dagger: What was what?

Attendant: The car to Lindblum just departed.

Familiar Voice: I missed my ride!

Dagger: ...? That voice sounds familiar.

Dagger checks outside.

Dagger: That's...

Dagger saw Marcus and Cinna.

Cinna: I missed my ride! What am I gonna do now!?

Marcus: How the heck should I know...? You were the one who wanted to
watch the scenery while eating South Gate Bundt Cake.

Cinna: I'm gonna be late returning to Lindblum...

Marcus: There's nothing we can do. I won't tell the boss.

Cinna: Thanks, buddy! Let's eat another bundt cake!

Marcus: Geez...

Dagger follows Marcus and Cinna to the resting room.

Steiner: Scoundrels!

Dagger: ???

Steiner: Are you here to kidnap the princess again!?

Cinna: Who's the big tin man?

Steiner: WHAT!? How dare you!

Marcus: He's the captain of the knights of Pluto.

Cinna: Oh yeah! You're one bad actor.

Steiner: Grrr...! Have you no respect?

Dagger talks to Marcus.

Dagger: You're Marcus, right? What are you doing here?

Marcus: Princess!? What are you doing here?

Cinna: Hey, check it out! It's the princess.

Marcus: When we escaped from Evil Forest...

Steiner: Princess! You shouldn't waste your breath on criminals!

Dagger talks to Steiner.

Steiner: Princess...!

Dagger: Steiner! That's enough!

Steiner: Wh-Wha...!?

Dagger: Can't I even talk to my friends?

Steiner: Friends!? But they're...

Dagger: Adelbert Steiner!

Steiner: Yes, Prin-ma'am!

Cinna: He's bein' scolded.

Marcus: How embarrassing.

Attendant: The cable car to Alexandria has arrived!

Cinna: It's here!

Marcus: But you're goin' to Lindblum.

Cinna: I-I know that! But you're going to Alexandria!

Marcus: Yeah, I'm heading to Treno.

Cinna: I'll see you off!

Dagger: Marcus is going to Treno, too?

Dagger: Let's go, Steiner. Steiner? Are you mad at me?

Steiner: No, ma'am! I'm coming along.

Outside...

Cinna: Good luck!

Marcus: Yeah. I'll save our bro!

Dagger: ...Bro?

In the cable car...

Conductor: Now departing.

Dagger: Why are you going to Treno, Marcus?

Marcus: To save our brother.

Dagger: Who?

Marcus: There's only one man I call 'Bro.' That's Blank. We've been gathering info to cure his petrification. We finally learned about an item called Supersoft that cures all forms of petrification.

Dagger: What about Cinna?

Marcus: Cinna's going to the Tantalus hideout in Lindblum to tell the others.

Dagger: I see...

Marcus: It's my turn for questions.

Dagger: Yes?

Marcus: Where's Zidane?

Dagger: We separated in Lindblum.

Marcus: Got rid of him as soon as he got you to Lindblum, huh?

Dagger: How could you say that!? It's only because Zidane kept treating me like a child! ...I don't care about him.

Marcus: Fine. Then I don't know anything.

Dagger:

Dagger talks to Marcus again.

Dagger: Say, Marcus... Um, is there any way I can help?

Marcus: Help with what?

Dagger: Well... I was partly responsible for what happened, so...

Marcus: No, thanks. We'll be fine on our own.

Dagger: But wouldn't it be better if-

Suddenly, the cable car stopped.

Steiner: Wh-What was that!?

Conductor: It might be engine trouble! Please remain in your seats while I check. Ahhhhhh!

The conductor saw a suspicious character.

Conductor: It's a demon! A demon with a pointy hat!!!

Dagger: A pointy hat!?

Dagger and Steiner gets out of the cable car.

Marcus: What's wrong?

Marcus follows Steiner and Dagger.

Marcus: What's going on!? !!!

Black Waltz No. 3 arrived.

Black Waltz No. 3: Mission...retrieve...princess...alive...

Dagger: Isn't that the one we saw on the cargo ship?

Steiner: Monster! I'll finish you off this time!

Dagger: Wait, Steiner! (to Black Waltz No. 3) Tell me something! Why do you want to capture me?

Steiner: Princess, it's too dangerous! Please stand back!

Black Waltz No. 3: Mission...retrieve...princess...alive...

Marcus: It's no use! It doesn't understand!

Dagger: But-

Black Waltz No. 3: Eliminate...all!

Dagger's group fights Black Waltz No. 3. After Dagger's group defeated Black Waltz No. 3...

Dagger: Why...? Why...? What did he want with me?

Steiner: Princess...

Marcus: Burmecia was attacked by an army of black mage soldiers...

Dagger: ...I know.

Marcus: Those mages wiped out the people of Burmecia...

Dagger:

Steiner: Who would do such a thing?

Marcus: Are you serious!? How ignorant can you be!?

Steiner: What do you mean!?

Dagger: Stop it, Steiner... I know who did it.

Steiner: Princess?

Dagger: We're almost in Alexandria... I must go to the castle and see my mother... She'll listen to me.

Later, back in the cable car...

Dagger: (to Marcus) I think we're almost there.

Marcus: So, you already heard about the attack on Burmecia.

Dagger: Of course. I'm not like Steiner.

Marcus: You've changed.

Dagger: Me? You mean the way I talk?

Marcus: Not just that.

Dagger: Well... A lot has happened. Oh, speaking of which...!

Marcus: Yeah?

Dagger: I've been through tons of battles. I'm a seasoned pro, now!

Marcus: What are you talking about?

Dagger: We need to find Supersoft and save Blank, right?

Marcus: You're gonna come along, even if I refuse, right?

Dagger: Of course I am! This is so exciting! I've always wanted to see the marvelous architecture of Treno. I can hardly wait!

Marcus: (On second thought, she hasn't changed that much.)

The cable car made it to the South Gate.

Conductor: Take care! The road splits up ahead. Go right to reach Treno, and left to reach Dali.

Dagger's group proceeds to Treno. In there...

Steiner: Princess, this is Treno, the City of Nobles.

Dagger: We need to find out which noble has the Supersoft.

Marcus: There aren't many nobles living here. The nights are long. It's a great place for thieves.

Steiner: People like you turned this city into a slum!

Marcus: ...Let's steal the Supersoft and get this over with.

Steiner: Steal!? How dare you! Do you think I'd let you commit a crime before my very eyes!?

Marcus: How else would we get the Supersoft?

Steiner: Quiet! I will not allow such disgraceful behavior!

Marcus: I never asked you to come along. Quit complaining.

Steiner: Don't you talk back to me! First of all-

Dagger left the scene.

Marcus: ...Uh-oh.

Steiner: Do not interrupt me while I'm talking!

Marcus: Look behind you.

Steiner: What!?

Marcus left the scene.

Steiner: Princess, I urge you not to...!!! P-Princess!? No... Not again... Never have I dealt with such hardship during my 18 years of service. This is because of you and your scoundrel friends...! Gone... An Alexandrian knight must not let such a frivolous matter get to him! I must find the princess!

Steiner goes to the auction and saw Dagger there.

Steiner: Princess! Thank goodness I found you. I was worried.

Dagger: How can I find the Supersoft when I keep having to listen to your complaints?

Steiner: Such harsh words...

Dagger: I don't think it's here, anyway. Where's Marcus?

Steiner: I do not know...

Dagger: Maybe Marcus found it already. Are you coming? I'm going, with or without you.

Steiner: I-I shall follow you, Princess.

Steiner left.

Dagger: ...I've seen him before...

Dagger and Steiner proceeds to the inn. There, they saw Marcus.

Marcus: We're ready to retrieve the Supersoft.

Dagger: Good! At last, we can save Blank! When do we leave?

Marcus: We can leave right away. So you're coming along, huh? Are you ready?

Dagger: Let's go.

Steiner yells at Dagger and said not to come, but Dagger ignores him and pays attention to Marcus.

Marcus: Boss's waiting at the dock.

Dagger: Boss? You mean...

Marcus: Yup, there's only one man we call 'Boss.'

Dagger immediately ran to Baku.

Baku: Princess, do you know that breakin' and enterin' is a crime?

Dagger: I need to make sure you don't steal anything else.

Marcus: Let's go.

Steiner: Dammit! I am coming along. It is my duty to protect the princess from bad influence!

Marcus: Do whatever you want.

Baku: Always talkin' about yer duty. Ain't you got any thoughts of yer own?

Steiner: Don't you talk back to me! I am escorting the princess-

Baku: I thought you might've changed after travelin' with Zidane, but...
...you ain't changed. Do you even know why you're here?

Steiner: Wh-What do you mean!?

Dagger: Let's just go, okay?

Meanwhile in the auction...

Auctioneer: How was Burmecia?

Kuja: Not bad... better if I didn't have to see those vermin and the ugly elephant-lady. They offend my senses.

Auctioneer: You must be tired.

Kuja: It's not over yet. The rest of the vermin must be done away with.

Auctioneer: Will you be heading to Cleyra, then?

Kuja: Yes; I trust you will deliver them.

Auctioneer: Certainly. I shall prepare now...

Kuja: By the way, did you see a pretty lady in the crowd today?

Auctioneer: A pretty lady? Shall I arrange a meeting?

Kuja: There's no need. The canary I've been after... She flew into my cage of her own free will.

Auctioneer: ?

Kuja: Never would I have imagined running into you in a place like this. It must be fate. But you cannot rest your wings yet... Fly home to your mother, my little canary. I, too, will welcome you home with open arms.

The screen switches to Dagger's crew boating.

Steiner: (to himself) What in the world am I doing...? I'm assisting thieves in committing a crime... No... I must be patient. Protect the princess. Escort her back to the castle. Focus on your duties... Trust the queen. She would never commit an atrocity. There must be a good reason. No thoughts of my own? Nonsense. How can I, a lowly knight, understand the queen's thinking? I need not worry about the ramblings of a criminal. Just think about escorting the princess home. I'll probably never see him again... He was the culprit... He pulled the princess and me into his intrigues.

Dagger: (to herself) Is was your fault, Zidane. If you hadn't treated me like a child... ...I wouldn't be here hunting after Supersoft to save one of your friends. Why am I doing this...? Because Blank saved me? Yes, he saved me. He saved my life... The least I can do is return the favor... But I never thought about things like this before...

Later, Dagger's crew reached the store in the employee's side.

Steiner: How are we to find Supersoft in this mountain of boxes?

Marcus: Just find it.

Dagger: ?

Marcus: (Someone's coming!)

A scholarly man came down the stairs.

Scholarly Man: Oh, I can't believe I ran out of ink on a night like this. I must find more ink and go back to the observatory...

Marcus: (Should I take care of him?)

Dagger: (.....! Wait!)

Steiner: (Princess! No!)

Scholarly Man: Hmm?

Dagger:

Scholarly Man: Y-You're...!

Dagger: (bowing) I missed you, Doctor Tot.

Tot: P-Princess! Princess Garnet!

Steiner: Doctor Tot?

Marcus: You know him?

Steiner: Doctor Tot is the highly respected scholar who tutored the princess!

Tot: Ah, Master Steiner. You must be quiet, or you'll wake the shopkeeper. But, Princess, what on earth are you doing here?

Dagger: It's a long story. We're looking for Supersoft right now.

Steiner: There is a proper reason for this! We are not here to steal, or commit any form of crime-

Shopkeeper: Somebody down there?

The shopkeeper woke up.

Marcus, Steiner, and Dagger: !

Tot: (to Dagger) Run along! I will give you Supersoft later. Go left from the Treno entrance, and continue until you find a large tower. The tower is my home. It's locked, but I shall unlock the door and await your arrival.

Dagger: Alright. Let's go back! Thank you, Doctor Tot. I'll see you later!

Dagger's group left.

Shopkeeper: Oh, it's you, Doctor Tot.

Tot: Ah, great timing. I ran out of ink.

Shopkeeper: You should've called me. I'll get yelled at if our inventory's wrong!

The shopkeeper went back to bed.

Tot: Princess...

Later, Dagger's group boated back at the inn.

Baku: So, this Tootsie's gonna give us Supersoft?

Marcus: It's Tot.

Baku: ACHOO!!! Whatever. I can't believe Tantalus is at the mercy of some old man. Hmph. In guess we gotta keep babysittin' the princess.

Marcus: Still?

Baku: He ain't gonna give you the Supersoft unless you're with the princess. That's the deal, Princess. I'm askin' you to take Marcus to

this Toot.

Marcus: ...It's Tot.

Dagger: I was going to, anyway.

Baku: Well, get some rest before you go. I'm sure Ted needs time to prepare.

Marcus: ...It's Tot.

Dagger's group gets some rest and they proceed to the now unlocked door where Tot told Dagger about. Near the tower...

Dagger: Oh... Doctor Tot...

Dagger arrived where Tot is.

Tot: Princess! Thank you for coming. Welcome to my humble abode.

Dagger: This is your home?

Tot: I traveled quite far in search of a sponsor for my research after I departed Alexandria. I finally found one here in Treno. You have grown into a fine young woman. I am pleased to see you again.

Steiner arrived.

Steiner: Doctor Tot! You look quite well.

Tot: Ah, Master Steiner! You are escorting the princess?

Steiner: Yes, sir! I deeply regret my earlier actions.

Tot: Still a straight arrow, aren't you? I'm sure you had your reasons, but I won't ask why. The Supersoft is in the box right there. Please take it.

Marcus arrived.

Marcus: Don't mind if I do!

Steiner: Have you no manners? Thank the good doctor!

Tot: It's quite alright, Master Steiner...

Dagger talks to Tot.

Dagger: Master Tot, is this Gaia?

Tot: Yes, it's a globe of our planet, Gaia.

Dagger: I remember your lessons.

Tot: You remember the ramblings of an old fool...

In Tot's memory...

Tot: Two phrases are commonly found in documents more than 500 years old... One is 'jewel.' The other is 'summoner tribe.' But 500 years ago,

the phrases mysteriously vanished from history... The archeologist Fredrick Ash theorized that 'jewel' refers to the pendant passed down to the ruler of Alexandria. But the pendant... It is much too small to be referring to the same 'jewel.' Other research suggests a relationship between 'eidolons' and magical 'stones'...

Garnet: Doctor Tot!

The younger Garnet appeared.

Tot: Ah, Princess!

Garnet: Were you reading big books again?

Tot: Ha ha ha... I already read every book in this library. But I think better when I'm surrounded by old books.

Garnet: Really? I don't like books.

Tot: You are a person of dignity. It is imperative that you study hard.

Garnet: I know, I know... Oh, but I was quite taken by that book you gave me. What was it called? It was...

Tot: Was it 'I Want to Be your Canary,' by Lord Avon?

Garnet: Oh yes, that's the one! So there is a book I like after all.

Tot: My, my...

Garnet: What's this, Doctor Tot?

Tot: That is a globe of Gaia. It's a model of our planet.

Garnet: A Gaia globe? I never knew our castle was shaped like a sphere.

Tot: Ha ha ha... We live on the surface, Princess.

Garnet: ?

Tot: Ah, yes, the stars! They inspired the theories relating stones and eidolons. That is why... Oh! I'm sorry, I was lost in thought again.

Garnet: It's okay. Where's my room on this globe?

Tot: Oh, your room is much too small to point out on this globe...

Garnet: What about the castle?

Tot: That, I can do...

Garnet: Oh, and Uncle Cid's castle?

The memory ended.

Dagger: How long has it been? Eight years?

Tot: Time passes quickly. But I haven't changed. I continue to collect and research these items.

Dagger: Where did you find this globe?

Tot: It's an antique. It's broken, as you can see, but I use it as an observation deck. Ironic, isn't it!? Looking up at the sky for inside a globe.

Dagger: It sure is...

Tot: Princess, I don't mean to meddle in your affairs, but... I am on your side, now and forever. Please tell me if there's anything I can do.

Dagger: Doctor Tot...

Tot: I see... So the queen's forces have already grown quite powerful... Okay, then. It may be dangerous, but I shall see to it that you reach Alexandria.

Dagger: How?

Tot: I had an old transportation device remodeled in the case of such an emergency. This way, please.

Steiner: Ah! We can finally return to Alexandria!

Marcus: I'm coming with you.

Steiner: What!? Why!?

Marcus: I can reach Blank more easily from Alexandria.

Dagger: Yes, come with us, Marcus. Okay, Steiner?

Steiner: Grrr...

Dagger: Let's go save Blank! And restore my mother to her former self!

Dagger's group proceeds down the ladder to Gargan Roo.

Tot: This is Gargan Roo, an ancient travel route between Treno and Alexandria.

Marcus: Why was this thing built under a tower?

Tot: Actually, Gargan Roo was in use long before even the invention of airships! The tower was built on top of the disused tunnel.

Dagger: But it looks fairly new.

Tot: I convinced Mr. Bishop to keep this place intact. I haven't used it since it was remodeled, mind you. We must first activate the tunnel-connection sequence and call the gargant inside. Let's see... Where was the sequence trigger?

Steiner: So, all we have to do is find the sequence trigger. Princess, let us find it!

Dagger's group found the activator lever and pulled it. Then, Dagger's group proceeds to the gargant call lever.

Tot: Ah, this is it! This where we call the gargant inside.

Dagger: What do you mean?

Tot: Gargan Roo Treno station is shaped like a circle. When you pull on that lever, gargant circles around, the station continuously.

Dagger: I don't understand what you're saying...

Tot: Better to show than tell. Princess, will you pull on that lever over there?

Dagger's group pulled the lever.

Dagger: (heard a noise) Wh-What is it!? What's that!?

Tot: Ah, perfect timing! That is the gargant, a giant insect that pulls the trolley. Next, we must halt the gargant.

Dagger's group approaches the "Feed" lever.

Tot: Yes, that's the one! The gargant should stop when you pull on the lever.

Dagger's group flicks the lever.

Food came down. The gargant stopped and eat.

Tot: Please hurry. It'll resume once it's finished eating.

Dagger: Are you sure it won't keep going around in circles?

Tot: It won't. I will reverse the connection sequence and let the gargant out of the station.

Everybody got on the trolley.

Tot: Please look after the princess, Master Steiner.

Steiner: Of course!

Tot: The princess is bright, but she is still young and naive. I am concerned about her safety. Please make your own decision on the matter at hand and protect her.

Steiner: I am but a humble knight. I cannot exceed my authority...

Tot: Is that an honest answer? You may endanger the princess if you keep telling yourself that.

Steiner: ...I shall take note of your counsel.

Tot: Fare you well, princess!

Dagger: Take care, Doctor Tot!

Tot: I must hurry.

The trolley took off. Tot approaches the call lever.

Tot: I just pull the lever...

Tot pulls the lever...

Tot: Be safe, Princess...

The screen switches to Dagger's group riding in a trolley.

Marcus: Finally!

Dagger: We can reach Alexandria now...

Marcus: You don't even see Treno anymore.

Dagger: I wonder how long it's going to take? I never dreamed of going home in a vehicle like this.

Steiner: Doctor Tot remains a unique intact-

Suddenly, the gargant stopped.

Steiner: Wh-What's wrong?

Dagger: It's hesitating. !!!

Steiner: Princess!

Dagger: Could this be the reason?

Dagger's group fights Ralvurahva. After the fight, Ralvurahva got away. Dagger's group got back on the trolley and they finally reached Alexandria.

Marcus: We're finally here.

Dagger: I think the gargant is tired, too.

Steiner: I never knew such a place existed in Alexandria...

Marcus: Where are we?

Dagger: Let's keep moving!

Moving on...

Marcus: Is this really Alexandria?

Steiner: Well, it must be!

Marcus: How do we get out?

Steiner: Hmm... Well... This way! Princess, let us make haste.

Dagger: Wait, Steiner! I know this place! Doctor Tot told me about this place. My ancestors built this place to keep enemies from invading. Doctor Tot also said...

Steiner: Princess! We can hear your stories later! The stale air cannot be good for us!

Marcus: And we gotta save Blank!

Dagger: Right. We need to hurry. Let's go Steiner!

Suddenly, a fence blocked one side.

Steiner: (to Marcus) You! What kind of trick is this!?

Marcus: I didn't do anything! Don't blame me.

Steiner: You really didn't do anything!?

Marcus: You don't believe me!?

The other fence blocked both of Dagger's group's side.

Marcus: Look, we missed our chance to escape.

Steiner: Graaagh!

Zorn: They fell for it!

Thorn: Fell for it, they did!

Steiner: Zorn! Thorn! I am Steiner, Captain of the Knights of Pluto! I have returned! Let us out at once!

Thorn: Too bad, it is.

Zorn: You're all under arrest.

Dagger: Zorn! Thorn! I've returned to Alexandria to speak with my mother. Take me to my mother!

Zorn: Yes, we will take you to see Queen Brahne, whether you like it or not.

Thorn: 'Capture Princess Garnet,' Queen Brahne said. Ordered us, she did.

Dagger: What!?

Steiner: Lies!

Marcus: What's going on!?

Meanwhile in Burmecia...

Zidane: Can you stand, Freya?

Freya: It is nothing.

Zidane: Take it easy, okay? How 'bout you, Vivi?

Vivi: Y-Yeah, I'm alright...

Zidane: So what now, people? They said they were going to Cleyra.

Freya: We have no choice! We must go to Cleyra, too!

Zidane: I knew you say that! You coming, Vivi?

Vivi: Um... Do you think we'll learn more about those black mages if we go to Cleyra?

Zidane: Yeah, I'd say we'll learn a lot about them as long as we follow Brahne and that Kuja guy.

Vivi: Then I'm with you!

Quina: Cleyra...? Sound yummy. I go with you!

Vivi: O-Oh, and what about the princess?

Zidane: Dagger? I'd never forget about her! She might not be here in Burmecia, but I know we'll find her soon. Well, let's move out!

Freya: Some say it lies in the desert west of Burmecia, but I know not whether we can enter the town itself.

Zidane: Brighten up a little! We'll figure it out when we get there!

Zidane's group proceeds to Cleyra.

Freya: The tempest subsides... By the gods!

Zidane: C'mon, let's go while we can!

Freya: Indeed. Let us press on.

Quina: Must hurry. Must find yummy-yummies!

We watch a movie of the view of Cleyra. Zidane's group proceeds to the top area where the town is.

Forest Oracle Kildea: Might you be Lady Freya?

Freya: Indeed, I am.

Sand Oracle Satrea: We have awaited your coming, my lady.

Freya: How did you come to know my identity?

Forest Oracle Kildea: The king of Burmecia has requested that we guide you to him.

Freya: Long live the king! Take me to him immediately!

Sand Oracle Satrea: At once, my lady.

Freya: Zidane, I shall go see the king. Why not take this chance to rest?

Zidane: Yeah, good idea.

Sand Oracle Satrea: This way, my lady.

Freya left with Sand Oracle Satrea.

Forest Oracle Kildea: (to Zidane) Allow me to be your guide and show

you our town.

Zidane: No thanks.

Forest Oracle Kildea: I see... I am sorry that I cannot be of service.

Zidane: Kinda strange place, don't ya think? Hey, Vivi and Quina, let's just poke around the town a little, okay?

Vivi: Uh...okay. Let's.

Quina: I go search for tasty munchies!

Zidane proceeds to the cathedral. Zidane talks to one of the oracle.

Tree Oracle Wylan: I have a message for Master Zidane from Lady Freya. I was told to convey the following... Zidane! This may take some time, so please wait at the inn!

Zidane is on his way to inn. Suddenly...

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Help!!!

Night Oracle Donnegan: What is the matter?

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Th-The antlion's mauling a kid!

Night Oracle Donnegan: The antlion!? It is usually so docile... How could--

Burmecian Soldier Dan: We gotta teach that beast a lesson!

Night Oracle Donnegan: This calls for immediate action. I shall inform the high priest at once.

Burmecian Soldier Dan: Hey buddy, wh-where ya going? These Cleyrans are all so damn lazy! (to Zidane) You there! Gimme a hand if you think you're good enough!

Zidane proceeds to the area with the Antlion.

Zidane: So that's the antlion!

Puck: Aaaa! Help me!!!

Vivi: NO!!!

Zidane: Hang in there, champ! We're gonna save you!

Freya: Is the child alright, Zidane?

Zidane: Yeah, he's fine.

Puck: Like hell, I'm fine!!!

Freya: That voice! Might it be Prince Puck!?

Puck: Freya! Where you been!?

Antlion: Urgurrrra!

Puck: Aaaaaaa!

Puck got thrown in the air and to Zidane's group.

Puck: OW!!! That hurt, ya stupid jerk!

Zidane: Here it comes!

Zidane's group fights Antlion. After Zidane's group defeats Antlion...

Freya: Are you alright, Your Highness?

Puck: Hey, Freya! Whassup?

Freya: But how can this be? I heard Your Highness disappeared upon leaving Burmecia...

Puck: Uh...yeah!

Freya: Well, let us go at once to the cathedral to inform His Majesty!

Puck: My old man, huh? Nah, I don't wanna see him! Just tell him I said hi, okay? Later!

Freya: But, Your Highness!!!

Puck left and then came back to talk to Vivi.

Puck: Take care, Vivi!

Quina: He so rude! Vivi much nicer.

Vivi: He's the first friend I ever had. I've gotta tell him something!

Later in the cathedral...

King of Burmecia: I see. So you saw Puck, eh?

Freya: As mischievous as ever, Your Majesty.

King of Burmecia: I haven't seen him in ages.

Freya: I heard His Highness left Burmecia one month after me. That makes it three years.

King of Burmecia: And yet both you and Puck decided to return to me this time of danger. I am grateful!

Cleyran High Priest: Freya, we shall conduct an ancient ceremony to strengthen the sandstorm. Surely no enemy of ours would attack with the powerful storm protecting Cleyra. And with the help of a dragon knight like you, the storm should grow even more powerful.

Freya: Ah, the ceremony from the time when Burmecia and Cleyra were one. I understand. (to Zidane) Zidane, I met with utter failure when trying to defend Burmecia... And I will not allow Brahne to exert her will upon us any longer!

Zidane: You've changed, Freya. I didn't think you were so strong when I

first met you.

Freya: I could not bring peace to Burmecia and thus fulfill Sir Fratley's wish. But now, all I can do is protect this beautiful place.

Zidane: Yeah, protecting Cleyra is the best thing you can do for yourself.

Freya: Doing so will help me.

Freya and the rest of the dancers begin the ceremony. After the music ended, the harp's string snapped.

Moon Maiden Claire: The strings have snapped... A terrible omen, this is...

We watch a movie of Cleyra's sandstorm disappearing.

Zidane: I can't believe the sandstorm disappeared. What happened...?

Freya: I don't know...

Cleyran High Priest: I have never witnessed anything like this since we settled here. On the harp, there is a magic stone. Since ancient times, we have used the power of the stone to control the sandstorm.

King of Burmecia: Perhaps someone is trying to invade Cleyra.

Cleyra High Priest: I fear you may be right, my lord.

King of Burmecia: I only hope our enemies don't come up the trunk...

Meanwhile in Alexandria, Steiner and Marcus are imprisoned in a cage.

Steiner: How dare they imprison us like this! Those wretched court jesters! Zorn and Thorn will never get away with this!

Marcus: I can't believe I got dragged into this.

Steiner: No one asked you to meddle in our affairs!

Marcus: It's pretty sad, getting' backstabbed by your own queen.

Steiner: This is all some kind of a mistake! I know the queen. She would never betray me!

Marcus: Wishful thinking. Who knows what she's gonna do to the princess...

Steiner: I must save the princess at all costs!

The screen switches to Dagger in her room.

Dagger: I wonder if Mother will even listen to me... Why did she attack Burmecia? And why did she arrest us like this? I must be sincere with her. She hasn't been herself lately... Actually, she's been acting rather strange since my birthday last year. The same day that tall man visited us... Maybe he had something to do with it. Come to think of it, that was when things began to change. Doctor Tot left Alexandria shortly afterwards, too. What happened that day?

Zorn and Thorn came into Dagger's room.

Zorn: Queen Brahne summons you.

Thorn: Come with us.

Dagger: What!? How dare you speak to be like that!?

Zorn: Quiet!

Thorn: With us, you are coming, and that is that!

Dagger: (What was that phrase...? Oh yeah.) Get off me, you scumbag!

Zorn: What was that? I do not understand.

Thorn: Understand what she said, I do not, either.

Zorn: Enough! Now, come with us!

Thorn: Enough! Now, come with us!

Dagger was forced to come with Zorn and Thorn. Later in the other room...

Zorn: Hurry up!

Thorn: For so long, the queen has waited.

Dagger: Mother...

Brahne: Darling, there you are. Where were you? I've been worried sick. Here, come closer.

Dagger: Mother, there is something I need to ask you.

Brahne: What is it, darling? I will tell you anything you wish to know.

Dagger: Did you... Is it true that you are responsible for the destruction of Burmecia?

Brahne: Oh... Well, no wonder you look so concerned. That is far from the truth, Garnet. You see, those Burmecian rats have been plotting to destroy Alexandria for some time. I couldn't just wait for them to attack and destroy our precious kingdom. So, I had no choice but to take initiative.

Dagger: Mother, is that really the truth?

Brahne: Of course. I would never lie to you.

Dagger: I don't believe you!

Brahne: Oh, darling, what's wrong? Why wouldn't you believe your mother?

Kuja arrived.

Kuja: May I play a part in this act?

Dagger: Act?

Kuja: Yes, an act from a beautiful play... There is a knight on a white horse... ..and a beautiful princess. It is a tale of tragic love. Overcome by grief, the princess must sleep for a hundred years...

Dagger: You... I've seen you before...

Kuja: It appears we were destined to meet again. My sweet angel, come to me. I will take you to a world of dreams.

Kuja cast a spell to put Dagger to sleep.

Kuja: She is beautiful, even in sleep.

Brahne: Hmph, impudent little girl. Zorn, Thorn! Prepare to extract the eidolons from Garnet.

Later in the next room, Zorn and Thorn are doing that the queen told them to do with Dagger.

Zorn: A belated happy birthday, Princess. Hee-hee-heee!

Thorn: Sixteen years old, the princess has become. Draw the eidolons from her, finally, we can.

Zorn: Eidolons of eternal life!

Thorn: Eidolons of infinite power!

Zorn: Arise from the 16 year sleep!

Thorn: Depart after the 16 year wait!

Zorn: Let there be light!

Thorn: Let there be life!

Zorn: The time has come!

Thorn: The time is now!

Zorn: Come forth!

Thorn: Odin, warrior of the dark!

The screen switches to Zidane. He saw Freya.

Zidane: What are you doing here?

Freya: Tell me. Why do you think the sandstorm disappeared?

Zidane: I don't know. I was surprised that there even was a sandstorm.

Freya: Did you know the sandstorm was here for a thousand years...? And in all that time, it never disappeared, not even once. Perhaps Brahne is behind all this.

Zidane: Actually, I'm more concerned about who that guy with Brahne in Burmecia was.

Freya: That man... I wonder who he was... .. Zidane, I'm going to head down to find out why the sand storm disappeared.

Zidane: Hey, I was thinking the same thing! Let's go together. I'm gonna go find Vivi and Quina. I'll meet you at the town entrance.

Freya proceeds to the town entrance.

Zidane: Hey, what took you so long? Alright, let's get going.

Vivi: I couldn't find Puck... I wonder if he went down the trunk?

Quina: This city have very yummy sand! This city delicious.

Freya: I failed Burmecia... but I won't fail Cleyra, no matter what.

Zidane's group moves on and suddenly, they were encountered by the Alexandrian Soldiers. Zidane's group fights their way to the bridge.

Freya: A moment, Zidane. Those Alexandrian villains back there... Weren't they too few I number to constitute a determined attack?

Zidane: Well... Let's wipe 'em out!

Suddenly...

Puck: Moron! (ran into Vivi) Ow! Freya! The town's in trouble! Ya gotta come back, please!

Freya: No! My fears were true! At once, my lord!

Puck: C'mon, you deadweights! Hustle!

Zidane: You heard him! Let's go!

Zidane's group went back to town.

Beatrice: Ha! They fell for it.

In the town...

Burmecian Soldier Dan: How dare you show up here! (attacked) Ungah!

Dan was killed by a Black Mage. More Black Mages appeared and continues to kill more citizens.

Black Mage 1: KILL!

Black Mage 2: KILL!

Later at the town entrance...

Moogles: (running) Kupo!

Flower Maiden Sharon: (to Zidane's group) Please save us!!!

Water Maiden Shannon: The town is full of demons!

Zidane: Are there really that many!?

Flower Maiden Sharon: They just keep coming!

Suddenly, a Black Mage appear.

Flower Maiden Sharon: Aaa!

Water Maiden Shannon: Aaa!

Black Mage: KILL!

Zidane's group fights the Black Mage. After defeating it, Zidane's group tried to move on, but then...

Flower Maiden Sharon: Aaa!

Water Maiden Shannon: Aaa!

Alexandrian Soldier: Foolish Cleyrans, your time has come!

Zidane: Over here!

The maidens evacuate to another area.

Zidane: I'm the one you want!

Zidane's group fights Alexandrian Soldiers. After Zidane's group defeats them...

Zidane: This must be the main attack force...

Suddenly, Black Mages appeared.

Black Mage 1: KILL!

Black Mage 2: KILL!

Zidane's group fights Black Mages. After Zidane's group defeats them...

Zidane: Ha! They got nothin' on me! But the town's in trouble!

Zidane's group moves on. Zidane's group saw the two oracles.

Zidane: Enemies are on their way up! How about your side?

Tree Oracle Wylan: The Burmecians are fighting back, but the demons keep coming...

Sand Oracle Satrea: We fled, unable to resist any longer...

Zidane: Damn those Alexandrians!

Sand Oracle Satrea: What are we to do...?

Tree Oracle Wylan: What are we to do...?

Zidane: We're out of time! Let's head to the right!

Zidane's group moves on until they saw Dan's family.

Burmecian Refugee Learie: Excuse me... Have you seen my husband?

Zidane: No, I sure haven't...

Kid 1: Daddy's gone!

Kid 2: Waaaah!

Suddenly, a Black Mage appeared.

Zidane: It's too dangerous here! Let's go left!

Learie and her kids evacuate to another area.

Zidane: You won't get by me!

Zidane's group fights 1 Black Mage and 2 Alexandrian Soldiers. After Zidane's group defeats them...

Zidane: We gotta be fast, or we'll lose them all!

Zidane moves on. They met up with Learie and the kids.

Burmecian Kid Jack: Hurry, tell us!

Burmecian Kid Adam: Which way now!?

Zidane: Let's see... Cross the bridge!

Learie and the kids moved to another area.

Zidane: Persistent bastards!

Zidane's group fights Alexandrian Soldiers. After Zidane's group defeats them...

Zidane: We can't hold them off forever!

Zidane caught up with Learie and the kids.

Burmecian Kid Jack: Are we safe now?

Burmecian Kid Adam: No more monsters?

Zidane: Hmm... We're not safe yet... So stay alert for more!

Burmecian Kid Jack: Waaa!!!

Burmecian Kid Adam: No!

Flower Maiden Sharon: I knew it wasn't over yet.

Zidane: Huh? What are you guys doing here?

Water Maiden Shannon: We like this place very much.

Flower Maiden Sharon: Even though we have lost the soul-soothing view of the sandstorm...

Zidane: Yeah, I think it's pretty, too. This whole town is pretty. And everyone here is so nice. That's why I wanna protect you! C'mon, let's

head to the cathedral. We can make our stand there!

Zidane's group and the rest of the survivors proceed to the cathedral. Outside of the cathedral...

Zidane: So, these are the only survivors...

Flower Maiden Sharon: Where is the high priest?

Water Maiden Shannon: Where is the king?

Burmecian Kid Jack: Where's dad?

Burmecian Kid Adam: Waaa!

Zidane: I hope they're all safe inside the cathedral... Alright, everyone inside!

Suddenly, a Black Mage appeared.

Zidane: They're back!

Water Maiden Shannon: Yeeow!

Suddenly, another Black Mage appeared blocking their way. Then another one appeared. Zidane's group and the survivors are surrounded.

Zidane: Dammit ! We're surrounded!

Black Mage 1: KILL!

Black Mage 2: KILL!

Black Mage 3: KILL!

Zidane: Dammit! I can't save 'em all!

Stranger: Minions of evil, you have gone too far! My spear will purge this land of you! You shall fall like leaves in the wind under the force of my blade!

The stranger finished off the Black Mages.

Stranger: Now, run!

Zidane: Dunno who you are, but I owe you one!

Zidane's group and the survivors go in to the cathedral. The stranger is actually Fratley.

Freya: Sir Fratley, I... I have missed you so much... I began my search for you immediately after you left Burmecia. Where have you been all these years...? To what corners of the world have you traveled? My dear Fratley... I climbed the highest mountains only to hear rumors of your victories... I searched the deepest valleys only to find your footsteps. But I never found you. And in the end, I heard something... Something unbearable!

Fratley: Freya, you say? I believe this is the first time we have met...

Freya: What...did you just say?

Fratley: I'm sorry, but I cannot remember you for the life of me...

Freya: Y-You jest! You cannot have forgotten me! It's me, Freya! Freya of Burmecia!!

Fratley: I am sorry...

Freya: No...

Zidane: Hey, wait a minute! You can't be serious! It's Freya, your lost love! How could you forget her!? Well, say something!!!

Freya: That is enough, Zidane...

Zidane: What!!!? You've been searching for this guy for years, and now he's right here!

King of Burmecia: Fratley! Do you remember me, the King of Burmecia?

Fratley: Not at all, I'm afraid.

King of Burmecia: Impossible! Have you forgotten everything that has passed!? Then let me ask you this: What brought you back to Burmecia? Is it not because you learned of the crisis here in Cleyra, whose people are our brothers?

Fratley: As a matter of fact...

Puck: As a matter of fact, I'll tell ya!

Puck arrived.

Fratley: Lord Puck!

Zidane, Freya, and King of Burmecia: Puck!

Puck: I found Fratley during my travels around the world! And you guessed to, he didn't know who I was! Or even who he was! But when Burmecia was attacked and he heard that Cleyra was in danger... His faint memories as a dragon knight called him back here!

Fratley: Dragon knight... Yes, I was once called that... But now, that is all I can remember...

Freya: Fratley...

Fratley: I must go.

Fratley left the scene.

Zidane: Freya, aren't you gonna follow him?

Freya: No... I am happy simply knowing that Sir Fratley still lives.

Puck: I'm sorry, Freya. I knew you weren't ready to see him, but with Cleyra under attack and all...

Freya: I need no such courtesy, Highness.

Puck: Uh...well, I'm gonna go after Fratley! Later!

Puck left the scene.

King of Burmecia: Wait, Puck! I have not seen you in ages!

Vivi: Wh-What? That was Puck? So, what happened? (to Freya) What's the matter, Freya? Are you crying?

Freya: Ahahaha... What irony. To find the man about whom I have dreamt endlessly... ..only to discover that he cannot even remember who I am! Come, Zidane! The enemy's hand has not been stilled! We must regroup!

Zidane: Freya...

Cleyran High Priest: Eeeek! Have mercy!

Beatrix: Hmph! Pathetic rodents! You fail to grasp the true power of this jewel!

Beatrix took the jewel.

Cleyran High Priest: Our magic stone!

Beatrix: Now that I have this jewel, I am through with your city!

Zidane: Wait!

Freya: Halt, villain!

Zidane's group chases after Beatrix. Outside of the cathedral...

Zidane: Think you can get away?

Beatrix: Get away? Hahaha. You're a bigger fool than I imagined... Have you forgotten how badly I beat you back in Burmecia?

Freya: So, you are more the fool for not finishing what you started!

Vivi: You're gonna pay!

Quina: I find no tasties in this town, so we cook you for breakfast!

Beatrix: Then allow me to shatter your delusions of grandeur.

Zidane's group fights Beatrix.

Beatrix: No more games.

Beatrix performs Stock Break on Zidane's group for the second time.

Beatrix: I shall leave with the jewel now.

After the fight...

Zidane: She's t-too powerful...

Beatrix: Black mages, our work here is done. Commence withdrawal immediately!

The Black Mage teleported Beatrix out of Cleyra.

Zidane: Hey, they disappeared! What now, Freya?

Freya: Good question... Zidane! Look out behind you!

A Black Mage appeared and cast a teleporter spell.

Zidane: There! I'm gonna follow 'em! Everyone follow me!

Zidane takes the teleporter and teleports out of Cleyra.

Vivi: Zidane! He's gone!

Freya: I highly doubt I will ever return to this place... Besides, this may be your last chance to find the truth about who you are... Come, Vivi. Show us your courage!

The other Black Mage teleported Freya out of Cleyra.

Vivi: Oh no... Freya's gone, too!

The final Black Mage cast a teleporter spell and Vivi got teleported out of Cleyra.

Quina: I no like heights...

Quina finds his/her way to escape Cleyra. The screen switches to the Red Rose (airship) with Queen Brahne.

Brahne: It's time... Without her summoning powers, Garnet is helpless. With this Dark Matter, I now hold the power to summon an eidolon. Now, I'll find out if Kuja's claims are true. Odin, come to me!!!

We watch a movie of Queen Brahne summoning Odin. Odin appeared from the sky and destroyed Cleyra with his spear. Later, Zidane's group got teleported to the Red Rose.

Zidane: Geez... Did you see that!?

Vivi: Cleyra...Puck...Quina... They're all gone...

Zidane: Dammit! Oh yeah! What happened to Beatrix!? I'll bet she's on the ship!

Zidane proceeds forward, but turns back.

Vivi: Freya... I think Zidane's calling for us.

Freya: Please... Leave me alone...

Zidane: We have to get behind the stairs! Someone's coming!

Zidane's group hides behind the stairs. Now we are with Beatrix.

Alexandrian Soldier: Welcome back, General.

Beatrix: How is Her Majesty?

Alexandrian Soldier: She has eagerly awaited your return. I am certain she will shower you with praise for our victory. Your supremacy is without question now. Steiner and his Knights of Pluto are nothing compared to you!

Beatrix: That is enough!

Alexandrian Soldier: Forgive me, General.

Beatrix: Tell Her Majesty that I will report to her shortly.

The soldier left.

Beatrix: That was ridiculous... My troops alone would've been more than enough to take Cleyra. Why does the queen insist on using black mages and eidolons? I didn't train all these years so I could take a backseat to anyone...

Alexandrian Soldier: (to the Black Mages) This way! Hurry up! You three, get on the telepod and go to Alexandria immediately.

Beatrix: ...There's no difference between them and me. We're all just blindly following orders. My heart and my will mean nothing... Maybe Steiner was right...

Beatrix left the scene.

Zidane: Did you hear that? Looks like Brahne's onboard this ship.

Zidane's group finds a dark door.

Freya: Can you see anything?

Zidane: It's too dark. I can't see anything.

Brahne: Beatrix!

Zidane, Freya, and Vivi: That's her!

The screen switches to Brahne and Beatrix.

Brahne: Did you get the item!?

Beatrix: Is this it, Your Majesty?

Brahne: Yes! This is it!

Beatrix gave the jewel to Brahne.

Brahne: Hahaha! With this, I can finally... ...No. I need one more! I must get the last jewel!

Beatrix: Not even a word of gratitude...

Brahne: Beatrix! Go find the last jewel!

Beatrix: ...Yes, Your Majesty. By the way, how is the princess doing?

Brahne: Garnet... We have drawn all the eidolons from her. She is no longer of any use to me.

Beatrice: What do you mean, Your Majesty?

Brahne: Garnet has committed a crime. I shall have her executed for stealing the jewel.

Beatrice: What?

Brahne: Don't make me repeat myself! When we go back to Alexandria, I'll have Garnet beheaded! Now, go! Find the last jewel!

Beatrice: Your Majesty...

Brahne: Hahahahaha!

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Zidane: Dagger!!!

Freya: Calm down! Fighting them now would be senseless. They still have Garnet in custody.

Zidane: So what are you saying!? We should just stand here!? We've gotta get to Alexandria before Brahne! That's the only way! The only question is how...

Vivi: Zidane, follow me!

Freya: Vivi! Where are you going!?

Zidane follows his group to the telepods.

Vivi: Remember how that soldier was talking about using these pods to go to Alexandria?

Zidane: Oh yeah... Alright, let's try it.

Zidane's group hops into the telepods.

Zidane: Well, here goes nothing! Dagger! I'm coming!

Meanwhile in Alexandria Castle...

Steiner: The time has come to escape!

Marcus: How?

Steiner: ...I don't know! But we must do something!

Marcus: Wait, I have an idea.

Steiner and Marcus rocks the cage back and forth and they eventually crashed into the balcony. Steiner and Marcus got out.

Steiner: Princess, I'm coming!

Steiner and Marcus take the stairs up. In there...

Steiner: Princess!

Marcus: I'm outta here. I'm goin' to Evil Forest to save my bro.

Marcus left the scene.

Steiner: You heartless cur! Huh? What is that!?

Zidane's group got teleported to Alexandria Castle.

Steiner: You!!! Wh-What are you doing here!?

Zidane: Steiner! Is this Alexandria!?

Steiner: What!? I have no time for your silly questions! I must escape this wretched dungeon of Alexandria and rescue the princess!

Zidane: Enough said! Let's go!

Steiner: Why is everyone leaving me behind!?

Zidane: Hurry up, Rusty! Dagger's life is in danger!

Steiner: What are you talking about!? Enough with your nonsense!!!

Vivi: It's true. We were just on the Red Rose, and we overheard Brahne talking. She said that once she returns to Alexandria, she is going to have Dagger executed.

Steiner: ...Is this really true?

Zidane: Yeah!!! We've got 30 minutes before Brahne arrives! Let's go!

Zidane's group moves on. Zidane saw Marcus.

Zidane: Marcus!?

Marcus: Watch out. I'm closin' the gate.

Marcus closed the gate on the Alexandrian Soldiers.

Zidane: What are you doing here?

Marcus: It's a long story. I'm gonna go to Evil Forest now and help Blank.

Zidane: Good luck! We're gonna go find Dagger!

Zidane's group quickly proceed to the Queen's chamber. In there...

Zidane: Where could she be...? (saw a candle) What a weird-looking candle... (Try to move it.)

The secret passage opened. Zidane's group proceeds to the altar. In there, they saw Zorn and Thorn with the unconscious Dagger.

Zidane: !!!?

Zorn: What are you doing here!?

Thorn: So meddlesome, you are! Mercy no more!

Zidane's group fights Zorn and Thorn. After Zidane's group wins the fight...

Zorn: Damn you! We will get you for this!

Thorn: Matters not to us. Finished with Garnet, we are.

Zorn and Thorn: You are too late!

Zidane's group approaches Dagger.

Zidane: Dagger, it's me! Dagger!!!

Vivi: Oh, no...

Steiner: P-PRINCESS!!! NOOOOO!!! Princess, please forgive me!!! I don't deserve to be a knight! I don't even deserve to live!

Freya: Her heart's still beating.

Zidane: Yeah. I know... Let's get out of here. Dagger, you're gonna be alright.

Zidane's group carries Dagger to the Queen's chamber. In there...

Freya: I don't think anyone followed us.

Freya closed the secret passage.

Steiner: My queen... Why have you done this...!? I have devoted my whole life to serving you and the princess...! Why did you harm the princess!!!? Why!!!?

Zidane: Steiner...

Vivi: Zidane. Do you think she'll ever wake up?

Zidane: Of course. She's asleep because she's tired. That's all. I wanna let Dagger rest a little. Do you guys mind? Thanks.

Zidane placed Dagger on a couch.

Zidane: If only I had gotten here sooner... I'm sorry...

Steiner: What happened to you? You are not your usual self. Go on... Blame my incompetence! Tell me it is my fault!

Zidane: No! I can't... I...I don't know what I feel right now... I can't even shed a tear...

Steiner:

Zorn and Thorn arrived.

Zorn and Thorn: There they are! There is no escape!

Beatrix arrived.

Beatrix: Welcome back, Steiner. Where have you been all this time? Don't tell me you have been enjoying the company of these scoundrels.

Zidane: What the hell!?! The only scoundrels around here are you and your fat queen!

Beatrice: Fools like you will never learn.

Zidane's group fights Beatrice.

Beatrice: I'll kill all enemies of Alexandria!

Beatrice performs Climhazzard on Zidane's group, wounding them.

Beatrice: Never step into this land again.

After the fight...

Beatrice: Your pathetic powers are useless against me.

Zidane: ...Hey, wait a minute... You're the general of this kingdom. As the general of Alexandria, what is your sworn duty!?! Isn't it to protect Dagger-your Princess Garnet? I'm sure you know who's sitting over there.

Beatrice: It can't be... Princess... ...So, it was true. The queen really did mean to kill her...

Steiner: WHAT!?! No! The queen would never do such a thing!

Beatrice: Steiner, it is time for you to accept the truth. ...My heart is set. All this time, I have been mistaken...

Zidane: I hate to say this, but the lady's right, Rusty. You'd better learn to accept it.

Beatrice: ...Citizens of Burmecia, please forgive me.

Freya: It's too late to seek forgiveness! ...But you can still save Dagger.

Zidane: Freya...

Freya: I tell you this because I acknowledge your powers. Help your princess.

Beatrice: I don't know if I can... ...but I will give it a try. I hope this will work.

Beatrice casts the first spell.

Thorn: Irrevocable is the spell we have cast!

Beatrice casts the second spell.

Zorn: It is useless!

Beatrice casts the third spell and it woke Dagger up.

Dagger: ...Oh...

Beatrice: Princess, are you alright?

Dagger: ...Ohh, my head... What happened...?

Zidane: Dagger!

Vivi: Yay!

Steiner: Princess!

Dagger: You're all here.

Brahne: What is all this ruckus!?

Brahne arrived.

Zorn: The princess has awakened, Your Majesty!

Thorn: Kidnapping the princess, they are, Your Majesty!

Brahne: Have you extracted all the eidolons from her?

Zorn and Thorn: We have, Your Majesty!

Brahne: Then, what are you waiting for? Take Garnet and throw her in prison!

Zorn and Thorn: Yes, Your Majesty!

Beatrix: I won't allow that.

Brahne: Oh? Are you defying me as well?

Beatrix: Your Majesty, it is my duty to protect the princess. I beg you, reconsider. Please do not harm the princess anymore. (to Zidane's group) All of you, leave here at once!

Freya: I'm staying! Zidane, go. Now!

Brahne: You two are joining forces? How amusing... (to Zorn and Thorn) Get rid of them.

Dagger: Mother!

Brahne left the scene.

Zidane: Freya! Be careful!

Freya: Don't worry.

Vivi opened the secret passage.

Zidane: Come on. Let's go!

Steiner: Wait!

Zidane's group left. Freya and Beatrix are about to confront Bandersnatch.

Zorn and Thorn: Bandersnatch, bite their heads off!

Freya and Beatrix fights Bandersnatch. After defeating it, we switch to Zidane's group. Suddenly, Zidane's group saw 3 Black Mages.

Zidane: Black mages! Dammit!

Black Mage 1: KILL!

Black Mage 2: KILL!

Black Mage 3: KILL!

Zidane's group fights 3 Black Mages. After Zidane's group defeats them, they move on.

Zidane: Where's Steiner? Hey! Hurry up!

Steiner: What am I doing here...?

Zidane: What's the matter?

Steiner: Beatrix served the queen all these years, and now she is turning against her... Freya lost her comrades, yet she insists on protecting the princess... The queen will never forgive them. She will kill them both... Zidane, I have a request.

Zidane: What? Why are you goin' formal all of a sudden?

Steiner: I want you to escort the princess out of Alexandria and take her to Doctor Tot. I'm sure Doctor Tot can come up with a plan to help us and our kingdom.

Zidane: Piece of cake. I'm an escape artist.

Vivi: Don't worry, Steiner. We'll get her there.

Steiner: Zidane, Master Vivi, I'm counting on you. Princess, I bid you farewell!

Steiner went back to catch up with Freya and Beatrix.

Dagger: Steiner... Everybody is fighting for me...

Zidane: That's right. They're all fighting for you... and for Alexandria... They're moving forward, giving everything they've got! So we have to move on, just like they are. We can't stop now! Come on!

Dagger: But...

Suddenly, a Bandersnatch appeared.

Zidane: Damn! We've got company!

Zidane's group fights Bandersnatch. After Zidane's group defeats it...

Zidane: Alright, let's go.

The screen switches to Beatrix and Freya.

Beatrix: !!!

Freya and Beatrix are surrounded by Bandersnatches.

Freya: What do you think!?

Beatrix: It's not going to be easy...

Freya: They're tougher than I expected...

More Bandersnatches appeared.

Beatrix: We're not out of danger yet.

Steiner: Beatrix! Freya!

Steiner arrived.

Beatrix: Steiner! What are you doing here!?

Steiner: I am Captain Adelbert Steiner of Alexandria. Grant me the honor of assisting you brave knights!

Freya: Enough with your babble! Fight!

Steiner, Freya, and Beatrix fights Bandersnatches. After they defeat the Bandersnatches, we are with Zidane's group. As they move on, a fence blocked their way out.

Zidane: What the hell!?

The other fence popped up and blocked both sides.

Zorn: They fell for it again!

Thorn: Really stupid, they are!

Zidane: You bastards!

Thorn: Bastards, we may be, but clever are we.

Zorn: Hee-hee-heee.

Marcus appeared and knocked down Thorn.

Marcus: Hey, what's up!?

Blank appeared and knocked down Zorn.

Blank: Zidane, are you alright!?

Zidane: Blank!

In Marcus and Blank's memory...

Marcus: Bro, over here!

Blank: Hold up. My body still feels kinda stiff.

Marcus: We've gotta hurry! Zidane and Dagger are in trouble!

Blank: Who's Dagger? Zidane's new girl?

Marcus: What? You don't know?

Blank: Know what? What are you talking about?

Marcus: Just keep running!

Blank: Sheez...

The memory ended.

Blank: We came here straight from Evil Forest.

Zidane: Man, I love you guys!

Marcus released the fence blocking the way to the gargant.

Marcus: Zidane, you can ride the gargant downstairs.

Dagger: Blank... Marcus...

Blank: Get out of here! We'll take care of this! There's more bad guys coming!

Zidane: I owe you guys big-time! (to his group) Let's get outta here!

Zidane's group proceeds to Gargan Roo.

Zidane: So this is Gargan Roo... Dagger? Are you alright?

Dagger:

Zidane: Forget I asked. I'm sure you have a lot on you mind...

Vivi: There's something coming!

The gargant arrived.

Zidane: Is this a gargant!? It's huge!

Vivi: ...We're riding this thing?

Zidane: Yeah. Let's get going. We have no time to waste.

Vivi hops aboard.

Zidane: Dagger!

Dagger: I...I don't know what to do anymore...

Zidane: Oh, come on! Why do you think everyone stayed behind!? Yeah, they're fighting for you, but also, they know, deep down inside, that they have to fight! Beatrix, Freya, Marcus, Blank, even Steiner... Sometimes, you can't think everything out. You have to listen to your heart.

Dagger hops aboard.

Zidane: Alright...

Zidane hops aboard and the gargant takes off.

Vivi: Where are we going?

Zidane: We're going to Treno. We'll stay there for the time being and try to figure out our next move.

Dagger:

Suddenly, the gargant stopped.

Vivi: Y-Yikes!

Dagger: That's-

Zidane: Is this what the gargant is scared of?

Dagger: I think this one's different from the one I ran into! Be careful!

Zidane's group fights Ralvuimago. After Zidane's group defeats it, they get back on the trolley.

Vivi: Umph!

Zidane: It's moving again... But why is it going so slowly? (to the gargant) Hey, hurry up!

Dagger: Don't yell at it. The poor thing must be scared to death.

Vivi: But it's...

Zidane: See? It can go faster. Good job!

Dagger: !!! No, Zidane! Look!

Another Ralvuimago appeared and chased after the gargant.

Zidane: Dammit, it's chasing us!

Dagger: We'll pass Treno if we don't stop soon!

The gargant passes Treno. While being chased...

Vivi: I think we just passed Treno...

Zidane: Dammit! We can't jump off at this speed.

Dagger: ! Zidane, look!

Zidane: Huh? What the... Shoot!!!

We watch a movie of the gargant moving so fast that they reached the exit and crashed.

Dagger: M-Mother...

Meanwhile in Alexandria Castle...

Zorn: Your Majesty!

The soldier blocked Zorn and Thorn's way.

Thorn: In my way, you are. Step back, underling!

Zorn: Let us through!

Alexandrian Soldier 1: I have strict orders from the queen not to let either of you through. I shall make any inquiries on your behalf.

Zorn and Thorn tried to go the other way, but the other soldier blocked their way.

Alexandrian Soldier 2: State your business.

Zorn: The queen's guests have arrived.

Thorn: Let them come in, shall we?

Alexandrian Soldier 2: I shall inquire. Stay here. (to Brahne) Your Majesty...

Brahne was told that the guests are coming.

Alexandrian Soldier 2: ...Yes, Your Majesty. (to Zorn and Thorn) Let the guests through. You two are dismissed.

Zorn: What does that mean?

Alexandrian Soldier 2: Queen Brahne is quite upset with you two for letting the princess escape with the pendant. You should go now.

Thorn Whatever to do are we!?

Zorn: We cannot live without the queen's backing! We must first tell the guests to come in!

Zorn and Thorn left.

Brahne: Phew...

Boisterous Woman: What a view. Who are you? Out of my way! The queen summoned me.

Alexandrian Soldier: Restrain yourself before the queen.

Boisterous Woman: Do you understand who you're talking to? I'm Lani, the best and the most beautiful bounty hunter in the world!

The guards let Lani and a red headed man through to meet Queen Brahne.

Lani: It's a pleasure to meet you, Your Majesty. I hear things aren't going too well.

Brahne: Have you no manners? This is what I get for hiring a lowlife.

Lani: I'm sure you didn't hire me for my manners, Your Majesty.

Brahne: Hmph. You have two objectives. The first is to retrieve the pendant, a national treasure, from Princess Garnet. The other is to

assassinate the black mage traveling with them.

Red-headed Man: ...What is that?

Brahne: A soulless golem. A defect is running free.

Lani: I don't know what happened between you and the princess, but what should I do if I meet with resistance?

Brahne: Hmph. Just get me the pendant back from that wretched girl!

Lani: Wonderful. My axe is pleased to hear that. It won't take long. Good day, Your Majesty.

Red-headed Man: Is it true that a boy with a tail is traveling with the princess?

Brahne: Yes, that accursed monkey! I shall give you an extra reward if you take care of him.

Red-headed Man: ...I was right. I'll take care of your request after I finish him.

Lani and the red-headed man left the scene. The soldier came to Brahne.

Alexandrian Soldier: Reporting! The Alexandrian fleet has returned to home waters! Please prepare to depart on the Red Rose.

Brahne: Ah, finally! We leave immediately! Bwahahaha!!!

Zidane's group woke up in Pinnacle Rocks.

Dagger: Mother... Ugh... Uh... I... Vivi... We made it? Where are we...?

Vivi: We're at Pinnacle Rocks. It's supposed to be near Lindblum Castle...

Dagger: Pinnacle Rocks...? Lindblum...? The gargant took us this far? ! Where's Freya? Steiner? And Beatrix? And...Zidane?

Vivi: He went to check the area.

Zidane: Dagger, you're awake!

Zidane arrived.

Zidane: Do you feel okay?

Dagger: Where is everyone, Zidane?

Zidane: I don't know... We're really far from Alexandria. Hey, don't worry. The Tantalus guys are with them, too. It's almost nightfall. They're probably in Treno by now.

Dagger: Do you think we can borrow an airship in Lindblum? Treno is only steps away if we can reach South Gate.

Zidane: Yeah...

Suddenly, an old man appeared.

Zidane: Are you our enemy?

Old Man: That is up to you... My name is Ramuh.

Dagger: I've heard your name somewhere...! I've seen your name in a book I read about summoning magic... You must be Ramuh, the Thunder God.

Ramuh: ...Do you know that your summon magic destroyed Cleyra? An eidolon follows its summoner's orders... It responded to the orders of a woman filled with greed this time...

Dagger: No... Mother...! I can't believe it... I was confined while Cleyra was destroyed...

Zidane: It wasn't your fault, Dagger. They knew. That's why they stayed behind.

Dagger: Everyone...

Ramuh: True, you were not the one who caused the destruction. But I must ask you... What will you do now?

Dagger: If I were more powerful... If I could use summon magic... I beg of you, please help me!

Ramuh: And cause more destruction?

Dagger: No... I was afraid of my summon magic, but not anymore!

Ramuh transformed into an older man.

Ramuh: ...Many years have passed since I last served a master... I must test to see whether you are truly fit to be my master. I will hide 5 manifestations of myself in this forest. Each one will carry a piece of the 'Hero's Story.' Collect all 5 pieces and tell me the story. If you put together the story to my satisfaction, I shall become your eidolon.

Ramuh disappeared.

Dagger: I'm sorry. I know we must hurry...

Zidane: It's okay, Dagger.

Vivi: I'll help you, too.

Dagger: Thank, you two.

Zidane's group eventually found 5 manifestations of Ramuh in Pinnacle Rocks. Then they move to the forest exit.

Ramuh: So you found all 5... Let's hear your story. However, the story comprises 4 parts. One of them doesn't belong. Be sure to choose only 4.

Dagger began choosing 4 of 5 parts of the story. She chose Beginning, Cooperation, Silence, and Human.

Ramuh: Let's recite your story... Beginning, Cooperation, Silence, and Human. Are you satisfied with your choices?

Dagger: Yes.

Ramuh: Let me ask you one thing... How come you chose 'Human' for the conclusion?

Dagger: People pass down stories of other people to whom they feel an affinity. The people in the story had flaws, as we all do. That is why they became heroes in the people's mind.

Ramuh: ...I want to know what you think, in your own words.

Dagger: Me...? I am away from my country, but I haven't forgotten about my people...

Ramuh: ...Your soul is very tense right now. Maybe you'll begin to relax once I become your eidolon...

Dagger: Thank you!

Ramuh: There are many paths. Remember that you alone choose the path on which you walk.

Dagger received Peridot. Ramuh disappeared.

Dagger: (Maybe now...) Let's go to Lindblum!

Zidane: ...Hey, old man! You're gone already?

Vivi: What's wrong?

Zidane: I wanted to ask him why he made Dagger play such a silly game. Heroic? Human? Those are just things people say after the fact. Why try to give meaning to what the main character of the story chose?

Vivi: ...I think the old man would've become her eidolon either way. That's the impression I got.

Dagger: Zidane! Vivi! Let's go!

Voice of Ramuh: You're exactly right... It's not what the people say afterward... What's important is being true to oneself. She may not have realized it, but when she wished to learn how to use summon magic... The summon power returned to her. Summon magic can be used for good or evil. She is still young, but there is room for growth... So I chose her as my master. I'll be watching over her... I hope you two will also protect her.

Vivi: Y-Yeah!

Zidane: Of course!

Zidane and Vivi caught up with Dagger.

Dagger: Look! It's Lindblum Castle! I don't think we can turn back once we jumped off. What do you want to do?

Zidane: Jump off now.

Zidane's group jumped off the branch.

Dagger: Zidane. I want to use summon magic to protect everyone...

Zidane: I know you can do it, Dagger!

Vivi: Zidane! Look...!

Zidane: ...Is that the Red Rose!?

We watch a movie of the Red Rose and the ships firing at Lindblum. Then, Black Mages came out and caused total chaos at the town. The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Zidane: Those lights must be telepods! They're sending back mages directly inside the castle! In Cleyra, they used summon magic afterwards...

Dagger: No...! Mother... Mother!

Zidane: Dagger!

Zidane and Vivi follows Dagger. We watch a movie of the Alexandrians summoning Atomos and Atomos sucked guards and pieces of scraps in Lindblum. Then, Atomos disappeared. Dagger was very upset and holds on to Zidane's hand. Later in Lindblum...

Zidane: It's so quiet...

Dagger: Mother... I can't believe you attacked Lindblum!

Zidane: Careful, they might still be around. (to Vivi) Vivi, you stay here and hide.

Vivi: No way! It's dangerous here!

Zidane: There are Alexandrian soldiers everywhere. You should stay out of their sight.

Vivi: ...Okay.

Zidane: Don't fret. We'll be right back.

Dagger: I'm sorry, Vivi.

Vivi: It's okay... Just make it quick.

Zidane and Dagger moves on and they saw Minister Artania.

Officer: The Industrial District is gone, and the Business and Theater Districts are also in ruins.

Minister Artania: Allocate soldiers to the reconstruction. We must get the citizens; lives back on track.

Officer: Yes, sir.

Dagger: Uncle Artania!

Minister Artania: Princess Garnet! Master Zidane! Glad to see you're both safe!

Dagger: Where is Uncle Cid...? Is the regent safe?

Minister Artania: Yes, Princess. The castle was spared. Regent Cid is alive.

Dagger: Thank goodness...

Minister Artania: I will take you to see him.

In the castle...

Minister Artania: Princess Garnet is back!

Dagger: Uncle Cid!

Regent Cid: Garnet! I thought Brahne imprisoned you!

Dagger: Zidane rescued me.

Regent Cid: Thank you, Zidane. <Gwok!>

Dagger: But Freya, Steiner, and Beatrix were left behind. I...

Regent Cid: Ah, the renowned General Beatrix. I don't think you have anything to worry about.

Zidane: I don't think so, either, Dagger. We wound up in Pinnacle Rocks instead of Treno, but... ..they'll be fine on their own.

Regent Cid: <Gwok-gwok!> Pinnacle...? Did you ride the gargant?

Zidane: How did you know?

Regent Cid: It's my job to know the land surrounding my country. However... I sometimes lack foresight. Brahne was after the <gwok> idolons. That much, I knew. But I underestimated the power of idolons. Maybe I deserve to be cursed with this body.

Zidane: I'm glad you surrendered. Cleyra resisted and perished.

Dagger: (What should I say...? What can I do...?)

Soldier 1: Hey, we got a live one here!

Soldier 2: Watch out! It might attack!

Soldier 1: Hey, this one's much smaller than the others.

Vivi: Ouch! Let me go! I'm not one of them!

Zidane: !

Dagger: !

Soldier 1: Then why are you dressed like a black mage!?

Zidane: That must be...

Soldier 1: We took an Alexandrian soldier into custody!

Vivi: I just said-

Soldier 2: Should we turn it over to Alexandria?

Dagger: Uncle Cid...

Minister Artania: Let him go. Master Vivi is not an Alexandrian soldier. It's only disguise to deceive the enemy.

Soldier 1: I-I see! My apologies.

Vivi:

Regent Cid: I've acquired more information about Queen Brahne <gwok>. A weapons dealer named Kuja is behind the recent string of attacks. Kuja has been supplying Brahne with highly advanced magic weapons.

Dagger: Supplying my mother...with weapons?

Regent Cid: Yes. Those black mage soldiers are among these weapons.

Minister Artania: According to eyewitnesses in Treno, Kuja appeared from the northern sky on a silver dragon.

Zidane: (That's the guy I saw in Burmecia!)

Minister Artania: That he came from the north suggests that he is from the Outer Continent.

Dagger: The Outer...Continent?

Zidane: There are many unexplored continents in the world. The Outer Continent is an unexplored continent located to the north of our Mist Continent.

Regent Cid: I believe Kuja is the only one supplying <gwok> Brahne with weapons.

Dagger: The man I saw at the castle must have been Kuja. He must be the one who is corrupting my mother!

Zidane: if we defeat Kuja...!

Dagger: If we eliminate Kuja...

Regent Cid: You both catch on quickly. Defeat Kuja, and Brahne loses her weapon supply. That will be our cue for a counterattack.

Minister Artania: Challenging Brahne now will only result in more casualties.

Zidane: So we crush the source of evil!

Minister Artania: Yes. Kuja find other clients, even if we defeat Brahne.

Dagger: I make no excuses for my mother's behavior, but I shan't forgive Kuja for taking advantage of her! But first, we must rescue Steiner and the others...

Regent Cid: I'm afraid I can't spare any soldiers. They must remain to protect our citizens.

Zidane: Hey, Dagger. I'm telling you, they'll be fine. The best dragon knight of Burmecia, the female general of Alexandria, and Rusty... How could they lose? Besides, you have me to protect you!

Dagger: Then I'll look for Kuja.

Vivi: I wanna go, too... There's no place for me here...

Zidane: Alright! Let's go kick Kuja's butt! (to Regent Cid) Will you lend us the fastest airship in Lindblum?

Regent Cid: Airships can only fly where there is Mist, and the Mist only exists on this continent. <Gwok.> That means you can't cross the ocean on an airship.

Zidane: What about the new airship that can fly without Mist?

Regent Cid: It's not ready yet <gwok>. Besides, it's under Brahne's control. Brahne gave us two conditions for our surrender. One was the surrender of the new airship. The other was the hand over <gwok> the Falcon Claw.

Zidane: The airship, I can understand, bit what does she want with a piece of stone?

Regent Cid: I have no idea...

Zidane: Alright. We'll take a boat.

Regent Cid: That's not an option, either. The harbor was also seized.

Zidane: Ahhhhhh!!! What do you want us to do!? Swim!?

Regent Cid: There is a way. There's an old excavation site near a swamp located north from the castle. Monsters not native to our continent are rumored to appear in the excavation site. The cave, which was found during excavation, is rumored to lead to another continent.

Dagger: Will this cave lead us to the Outer Continent?

Zidane: Doesn't sound too reliable... Are you sure?

Regent Cid: <Gwok> I'm not sure...

Zidane: I guess we'll find out. Not knowing is half of the fun, huh?

Regent Cid: Please protect Princess Garnet. We'll prepare the counterattack in the meantime. It's not much, use it to prepare for your journey.

Regent Cid gave some Gil to Dagger.

Vivi: I-I'll wait here. Zidane, will you get my stuff, too?

Zidane: Yeah. That's probably a good idea.

In the town...

Man: Listen, Lindblum is Alexandrian territory now. You won't be able to come back for a while. Prepare yourself well. Let me know when you're ready. Are you ready?

Zidane: Ready.

Man: Follow me. The regent is waiting on the Base Level.

Zidane and Dagger proceeds to the elevator lift and while going down to the Base level...

Zidane: I wonder what Brahne is going to do...

Dagger: Zidane... Do we really have to go to the Outer Continent...?

Zidane: Hey, what's up with you? You said you wanted to go.

Dagger: What if... What if something happens to you or Vivi...? I might not be okay on my own.

Zidane: Are you worried about me?

Dagger: What? Well, I mean, um... A princess needs her elite guard, you know...? I'd be stranded without you guys!

Zidane: Are you trying to flatter me by calling me your elite guard?

Dagger is starting to get mad.

Zidane: Sorry, I was only kidding. You'll be fine with me. What about you, Dagger? We don't know anything about the Outer Continent.

Dagger: I've made up my mind. I don't want my mother to commit any more atrocities.

Zidane: Alright, then. I'll protect you and Vivi!

Dagger: Thank you...

Zidane and Dagger met Vivi in the Base level.

Vivi: Zidane! I'm so glad you're here!

Dagger: Vivi, where's Uncle Cid?

Vivi: U-Um... he said, 'Gwok-gwok. Wait here,' and went away somewhere...

Dagger: Where could he be...?

Vivi: !

Regent Cid arrived.

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> I did it! I stopped a trolley between here and the Serpent's Gate! <Gwok-gwok!> That'll show them not to fool around in my castle! Now, go. <Gwok-gwok.> The excavation site is like a maze. Be careful not to get lost. And... Take this with you!

Zidane: It's a rag.

Regent Cid: You big dope! It's not just a rag! <Gwok!> That's the national treasure of Lindblum! That is an ancient map of the entire world!

Zidane: Wow. Thanks!

Zidane's group received the World Map.

Regent Cid: Now, go, before they find you! Zidane, Vivi. Please protect Princess Garnet.

Vivi: Okay.

Dagger: Uncle Cid...

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> Don't worry about me. I'm stronger than I look! Now, go! They'll squeeze all the oglop oil out of my body if we're caught!

Zidane: Let's go, Dagger.

Zidane's group proceeds to Qu's Marsh. In there, they saw Quina.

Zidane: Quina! You're safe!

Quina: Long time no see, Zidane. Much trouble coming back from Cleyra alone.

Zidane: Did you know a way to the Outer Continent? I heard there was an entrance somewhere around here...

Quina: Outer Continent... Maybe I find more delicious frogs. Sound interesting. I help you, and I eat more frogs. I come with you.

Quina joins Zidane's group. Zidane's group talks to Quale in his/her hut.

Zidane: Do you know any excavation sites in this area?

Quale: Excavation sites? Hmm... Maybe I hear about it... Maybe not... Maybe.

Zidane: What do you mean, 'Maybe'!?

Quale: I only hear about excavation site around this area. This marsh road covered in brush. Maybe there road to excavation site hidden somewhere. Quina might know.

Zidane: Hidden in brush, huh? Well, thanks anyway.

Zidane moves on to the brush.

Zidane: Quina! Where are you going!?

Quina: I smell! I smell frogs!

Zidane: No, we have to look for the entrance to the Outer Continent!

Quina: I smell frog this way!

Zidane: Hey, Quina! Hold on! Darn it...

In the excavation site...

Quina: A-HA! Frogs!!!

Quina missed catching the frogs.

Quina: Hold!

Quina broke the chains blocking the excavation site.

Quina: They run away again...

Zidane: Wait a minute, Quina. Check it out. This entrance... This must be the entrance to the excavation site!

Quina: First time I see this. Zidane, we going inside?

Zidane: Of course we will. It might lead to the Outer Continent. Let's go!

Zidane's group proceeds to Fossil Roo. In there...

Zidane: Wh-What the-

Suddenly, Armodullahan came out of the cell.

Zidane: You've gotta be kidding!

Zidane finally runs to safety and Armodullahan fell into the pit. Later...

Vivi: (fell down) Yikes!

Dagger: Ahh! Sorry, Vivi. Are you okay?

Vivi: Yeah... Look out!

Zidane: (to Quina blocking the way) Outta my way!

Quina: Aiya!

Zidane: That was a close call.

Lani: Geez... That didn't do much good.

Zidane: Who's there!?

Lani appeared.

Lani: I've been looking for you, Princess Garnet.

Zidane: H-Have we met?

Dagger: (Quit flirting with her!)

Zidane: Yes, ma'am...

Lani: I'm Lani. I'm under order by the queen to find you, Princess.

Dagger: My mother? What does my mother want with me? I am not returning to Alexandria.

Lani: I've got bad news for you, Princess. It's not you I'm after.

Dagger: What do you mean?

Lani: The pendant. Does that sound familiar?

Dagger: !

Lani: Let's have it back. It belongs to Queen Brahne.

Dagger:

Lani: Listen carefully, Princess. You escaped unscathed from the monster, but you're not gonna be so lucky with me. Hand over the pendant right this minute.

Zidane: Are you the one who set that monster loose?

Lani: Retrieving the pendant far outweighs the safety of the princess.

Zidane: ...What do you mean by that?

Lani: I meant exactly what I said. My orders don't include Princess Garnet's safe return.

Dagger: What...? My mother would never order that.

Lani: (drawing her weapon) That's enough! Give me the pendant! You're trying my patience!

Zidane: Hmph. What if we refuse?

Lani: Stubborn fools! Have it your way!

Zidane's group fights Lani.

Lani: You're pretty good.

After the fight...

Lani: What a drag. I'll let you guys go for now!

Lani left the scene. Zidane's group eventually finds a way out of Fossil Roo. Zidane's group proceeds to Conde Petie.

Vivi: We came all this way, and there's still no Mist at all...

Zidane: Yeah, and what a weird-shaped...village? What is that thing?

Dagger: Maybe it's a temple of some kind.

Quina: Is very delicious shape. Inside might have fine cuisine!

Quina goes in.

Zidane: Geez... All s/he ever thinks about is food.

Dagger: Well, all you ever think about is girls...

Zidane: Uh, that's right! My mind is filled with thoughts of...you!

Vivi: ...

Zidane: ... Maybe I'm trying too hard...

In the entrance...

Villager 1: Rally-ho!

Villager 2: Rally-ho!

Villager 3: Rally-ho!

Zidane: Wh-What's up with these little guys?

Dagger: Wr-Wrally-ho...?

Vivi: Rh-Rhallie-who...?

Villager 2: Rally-ho!

Villager 3: Rally-ho!

Zidane: Hey, hold up...

Villager 1: Rally-ho!

Zidane: Oh, come on...

Villager 1: Rally-ho's oor sacred greetin'!

Villager 2: If ye dinnae say Rally-ho, then ye cannae enter Conde Petie, hametoon o' the dwarves!

Zidane: Now, wait just a minute here...

Villager 1: Rally-ho!

Villager 2: Rally-ho!

Zidane:Rally-ho...

Dwarf (the villager): Rally-ho! Ye can pass!

Zidane saw the exit, but he talks to the guard.

Richard Watchman: Ye're no allowed tae pass, laddie!

Zidane then saw Vivi.

Zidane: What's the matter, Vivi?

Vivi: Um... These two people-

Derek Stonehammer: That hen ye cooked fer me was awful good, it was!

What way did ye cook it? Did ye frizzle it wi' some o' yer mejick?

Kelley Fingerwaver: The berries ye traded me were astoondin', too! But likesay, what's a wee lad like ye doin' here the day?

Zidane: Hey, Vivi... Do you know these people?

Vivi: How could I? I've never been here before.

Zidane: Yeah, I don't think so.

Vivi: I'll try talking to some other people.

Zidane looks around and suddenly...

Zidane: Hm?

Wendy Grocer: Plenty thanks. Yir goods are always welcome here.

Black Mage: ...

Zidane: Hey...

Black Mage: !!!

Vivi: What the-

Black Mage: ...

Vivi: W-Wait!

Zidane: Hang on, Vivi!

Outside the shop...

Vivi: Come back!

Vivi is chasing after the Black Mage.

Zidane: Vivi!

Dagger: Zidane, what's going on?

Zidane: I have no idea... But we gotta catch up with Vivi!

Zidane and Dagger caught up with Vivi.

Zidane: Vivi, where's the black mage?

Vivi: He ran away.

Zidane: Huh. Where the heck did he come from? Has Brahne found us?

Harold Pathknower: Do ye ken the Pyntie-Hets?

Vivi: Huh? Did you just say Pointy-Hats!?

Harold Pathknower: Nay, ah said Pyntie-Hets! They often come from the Sootheast Forest tae trade wi' us.

Zidane: They!? You mean there's lots of them? And...they live near here?

Harold Pathknower: Aye! But ye gots tae go all the way aroon' yon cliff an' then go east tae find the Soottheast Forest! They live sae deep in the forest, that even owls dinnae live there!

Zidane: What's that supposed to mean?

Vivi: Zidane, I want to go to the Southeast Forest and find them!

Zidane: Yeah, me too.

Dagger: I think it's a good idea. We might find some clues.

Quina: If possible to try new food, anywhere fine.

Zidane: Alright, let's head to the Southeast Forest.

Zidane's group proceeds to Southeast Forest. In there...

Zidane: I think they live 'so deep in the forest that owls don't even live there.

Zidane eventually finds the Black Mage. We watch a movie of the Black Mage casting a spell of an entrance to the Black Mage Village and Zidane's group follows the Black Mage. Inside the village...

Black Mage 1: !

Black Mage 2: Ahh! H-H-Humans...

Black Mage 3: ? What's wrong? (saw Zidane's group) !

Black Mage 2: Humans! Run!!!

The Black Mages ran.

Vivi: W-Wait... (to Zidane) Did you see them!?

Zidane: Y-Yeah...

Vivi: They were talking! There ARE others like me!

Vivi left.

Dagger: Why would anyone build a village in the middle of a dying forest...?

Zidane: Beats me...

Dagger: Where's Vivi?

Zidane: He went that way...but I... Hey!

Dagger left.

Quina: A village! Village always have good food. I go find!

Zidane: Geez, you people...

Zidane checks the Synthesis Shop and talks to Dagger.

Dagger: Oh, Zidane...

Zidane: What's up, Dagger?

Dagger: I was telling them why we're here.

Zidane: Why are we here?

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane: It's just a joke! Geez, don't get mad.

Dagger: Can't you see, I'm trying to make them understand?

Black Mage No. 32: What's a 'joke'? Is it scary?

Zidane: It's something funny! Right, Dagger?

Black Mage No. 192: You don't seem so bad.

Black Mage No. 32: 'Cause you're here to fight the bad guys!

Zidane: That's right!

Dagger: You're unbelievable, you know that? Hey, where's Vivi?

Zidane: I don't know where he went...

Dagger: That worries me... I'm going to look for him!

Dagger left.

Zidane: H-Hey, Dagger! Not again...

Zidane goes outside and saw Vivi running.

Zidane: Hey, Vivi! What's up with him...?

Zidane proceeds to the inn.

Zidane: ...Vivi? What's wrong?

Vivi: Huh? Oh, Zidane... It's... It's nothing.

Zidane: Did something bad happen? All the black mages seem pretty nice.

Vivi: Nothing happened...

Quina: Grr... I hungry! This village people eat terrible food.

Dagger: Oh, Vivi. You're back. Where were you? You look very...

Zidane: You got tired, right, Vivi?

Vivi: Y-Yeah...

Dagger: I don't blame you. We've been walking around non-stop. We should call it a day.

Quina: I go to forest and look for food.

Dagger: What about you, Zidane?

Zidane: Yeah, we'll call it a day.

Later during the middle of the night...

Dagger: Zidane... Vivi just walked out.

Zidane: Maybe he's letting us have a little romantic quiet time.

Dagger: I'm serious!

Zidane: ...I wouldn't worry too much.

Dagger: But...

Zidane: He's trying to figure something out for himself.

Dagger:

The screen switches to Vivi.

Zidane: Think about it... Vivi's never met black mages like himself before.

Dagger: But what if they're being mean to him, or saying nasty things?

Zidane: Do you really think the people of this village gathered to do something like that?

Dagger:

Zidane: Maybe... Just maybe, he'll find what he's looking for.

Dagger: ...Find what?

Zidane: A place to call home.

Dagger: Home...?

Zidane: Yeah... A place where he belongs...

The screen now switches back to Zidane and Dagger.

Dagger: Hey, Zidane... When you said home...

Zidane: What's the matter? Can't fall asleep? How about a bedtime story? Let's see... Once upon a time...

Dagger: There you go again, teasing me...

Zidane: Once upon a time... ...there was a man. There was a man who didn't know where he came from...

Dagger: ...Zidane?

Zidane: This man had longed to find his birthplace ever since he was a

small child.

The screen switches to Zidane's story about a man (Zidane).

Zidane: His birthplace. A place he only remembered in his dreams...

Dagger: Why...?

Zidane: He wanted to know more about himself, maybe. About his parents, the house where he was born... One day, the man left the home of his adoptive father and went on a quest to find the answer. His only clue was the blue light he saw in his dreams...

Dagger: A blue light?

Zidane: Yeah. He thought it might be a memory of his birthplace. An ocean, maybe...?

Dagger: Did he find it?

Zidane: Hey, you're jumping ahead. A lot of things happened along the way. Alright, we can skip ahead... No, he never found it. How could he? His only clue was a colored light. So he went back to the home of his adoptive father... What do you think his father did when he came home?

Dagger: ...Welcomed him home?

Zidane: No way! The father raised his fist and beat the son he had worked so hard to raise...

The father (Baku) hit the man (Zidane).

Dagger: Why?

Zidane: I don't know... But you know what surprised him even more? The father smiled, after beating up his son! Can you believe that? He just gave his son a beating. But this is what the man thought when he saw his father smile... This is my home. This is the place I call home. The man is still looking for his birthplace. But he already has a home. Maybe... ..it's the same for Vivi. He's looking for a place to call home.

Dagger: I wonder if Vivi will stay in this village?

The screen switches to Vivi.

Zidane: Who knows... That's for him to decide.

The screen switches to Vivi with Black Mage No. 288 at the cemetery.

Black Mage No. 288: Hello. Nice to see you again.

Vivi: Um... I wanted to ask you something.

Black Mage No. 288: What is it?

Vivi: I was wondering how many people have ...stopped...moving.

Black Mage No. 288: You're very kind to use our words. But you already know what it means to live...and to die. You're asking about our friends who have 'died,' not 'stopped.'

Vivi: Um...

Black Mage No. 288: Seven of our friends stopped functioning recently... I think our life span is limited... I've suspected this ever since the first one came to a stop. It varies a little, but most of us stop moving one year after production.

Vivi: No...

Black Mage No. 288: I haven't told anyone else about this. If I did, they'd feel the same way I do.

Vivi: What do you feel?

Black Mage No. 288: I don't know... Fear? I don't want to stop. And maybe I want to run away from it all. But living in the village with everyone fills me with joy. The joy of living with them far outweighs the fear of death. Isn't it the same for you? Traveling with your friends gives your life meaning.

Vivi: I...

The next morning, Zidane came out.

Dagger: (to the Black Mage No. 144) Really?

Black Mage No. 144: Yeah, I think that's what you're looking for.

Dagger: Thank you!

Zidane: What's up, Dagger?

Dagger: Zidane! Someone saw a silver dragon in the northwest part of this continent. The people of Conde Petie said there was a place called Sanctuary, where entrance is restricted...

Black Mage No. 144: I think this 'Kuja' said something about a secret being hidden on this continent.

Zidane: You heard him say that?

Black Mage No. 144: Yeah. Something about the source of the Mist...

Dagger: Maybe we can find out more if we go there. And maybe save my mother...

Zidane: Right...

Dagger: Oh, where's Vivi? If Vivi's says he's staying behind...

Vivi: Wait for me!

Dagger: Vivi?

Vivi: Everyone in the village asked me to see the outside world and tell them all about it.

Dagger: I see...

Zidane: Oh, man! I thought Dagger and I'd get to spend some quality time together.

Quina: What you say? You no can leave me here. I starve.

Zidane: Oh yeah, I forgot about you...

Dagger: Let's go, everyone! To Conde Petie! And to the Sanctuary that lies beyond!

Zidane's group proceeds to Conde Petie. In there...

Zidane: So the Sanctuary is on the other side of that valley...

Vivi: But the exit landing there from the upper floor is guarded by a dwarf who won't let us through.

Quina: Twin dwarfies block way out from shop on right side. No can get through.

Zidane: Hmm... Well, let's just try to go as far as we can.

Zidane's group talks to the guard blocking the exit.

Zidane: Say, I wanna get through here.

Richard Watchman: Never! Only those who've received the ceremony kin pass!

Zidane: What the heck is that ceremony?

Matthew Watchman: Speak tae His Holiness!

Zidane: And where is 'His Holiness'?

Richard Watchman: Ah dinnae ken where he is!

Zidane finds David Heavenguard and talks to him.

Zidane: Hey, mister... Are you the holy guy?

David Heavenguard: Aye. Ah'm Father David.

Zidane: What are you doing hanging around this hallway?

David Heavenguard: Well...a priest has much tae worry about, ye see?

Zidane: Yeah...whatever. Look, we wanna get past this village.

David Heavenguard: Hmph! Tradition states that only those who undergo the ceremony kin approach the Sanctuary.

Zidane: So, what the heck is that ceremony about, anyway?

David Heavenguard: Well, after a man an' a woman are blessed in holy union, they leave oan holy pilgrimage tae the Sanctuary.

Zidane: So...basically it's a wedding...and a honeymoon, right?

David Heavenguard: Ah dinnae ken yir words, lad, but methinks ye

understan'.

Dagger: So we can go to the Sanctuary if we undergo that ceremony, right?

Zidane: Oh, hey, Dagger! So yeah, that's the deal. Whaddya think? We can go if we get hitched. But there's no way we'd actually-

Dagger: Let's do it.

Zidane: What!?

David Heavenguard: Sae ye wantae be joined, eh? The ceremony's only fer dwarves, see... ..But we have sae few young folk nooadays. We're doon tae ninety-nine couples. Ah was worryin' about that very thin'... But that's the hairm? Bow we can have oor hundredth ceremony!

Zidane: ... Uhh... Dagger? Wh-What's going on?

Later in the ceremony...

David Heavenguard: Speerits o' the moontain, Speerits o' the wood...

Zidane: (Uh... Now, how did I get into this?)

David Heavenguard: Watch ower this man 'an woman as they begin their journey...

Zidane: (We gotta do this ceremony to get past this village...) (And only a guy and girl can have the ceremony...)

Later...

Zidane: Now, hold on a sec, Dagger! Don't you get it? This is marriage, m-a-r-r-i-a-g-e!

Dagger: No kidding... But we have to do it to go on, right?

Zidane: Yeah, but... But that's not reason enough!

Dagger: Oh, come on.

The priests came back.

Zidane: (What is she thinking?) (She's supposed to get angry and say no way!)

David Heavenguard: ...In sickness an' in health...

Zidane: (Of course we're just trying to get past this village...)

David Heavenguard: ...Have the strength to cairry ye through the trials...

Zidane: (Could it be that she... likes me?)

David Heavenguard: ...An' the wisdom tae follow the path...

Zidane: (Gotta admit, I was pretty deep that night in the black mage village. Maybe that's when she fell for me? I'm such a stud!)

David Heavenguard: May the blessin's o' heaven be upon this man an' woman!

Zidane: Dagger! Now we're man and wife! Time for a kiss...

Zidane attempted to kiss Dagger, but Dagger ran away and Zidane fell to the ground.

Zidane: Playing hard to get, eh?

Shamis Gatekeeper: Happy fit! Now ye need annoonce yer joinin' tae the twins at the other gate!

Zidane: What!? You mean there's more?

Shamis Gatekeeper: We have tae follow tradition, lad!

Zidane: Ah, well... Time for us newlyweds to make the rounds, Dagger.

Dagger: Remember, we're only married while we're here.

Zidane: Bliss is so fleeting.

Vivi: Zidane... What are we supposed to do?

Zidane: Hey! You guys tryin' to ruin our honeymoon?

Quina: But you no can just leave us here!

Zidane: Don't worry. I'll figure something out. Hmmm, let's see... Why don't you guys get married, too?

Vivi: What!?

Zidane: Yeah, that's it! In the meantime, Dagger and I can go announce our marriage.

Quina and Vivi: ...

Later, Zidane and Dagger talks to the guards blocking the exit.

Zidane: Hi, guys! We're the newlyweds, Zidane and Dagger.

Richard Watchman: Rally-ho! Happy fit! Off tae the Sanctuary then, are ye?

Dagger: That's right. Will you let us through now?

Matthew Watchman: Rally-ho! O' coorse! Safe journey tae both o' ye!

The Watchman twins left.

Zidane: Let us be off, my darling.

Richard Watchman: Thief!

Dagger: Huh?

Little Girl: Mog, hurry!

Mog: Kupo!

Richard Watchman and Matthew Watchman: Stop, thief!

Dagger: Wh-What's going on?

Zidane: I dunno. Let's go take a look.

Zidane and Dagger follow the Watchman twins.

Richard Watchman: They got away...

Matthew Watchman: Feuch! An' we cannae go any farther...

Zidane: Does anyone live out here?

Richard Watchman: O' course no! It's forbidden!

Matthew Watchman: Och! Yon two thieves are always snitchin' food!

Zidane: Oh yeah?

Matthew Watchman: Ah'll catch 'em next time!

Quina and Vivi arrived.

Dagger: Oh, hi, guys...

Zidane: So you've had your ceremony, right?

Vivi: Y-Yeah...

Quina: Thief have nerve to steal food right in front of me.

Zidane: Okay, time to press on.

Zidane proceeds to Mountain Path. There they saw the little girl stuck on a branch.

Zidane: Hey...

Mog: Kupopo!!!

Little Girl: Hurry, Mog! Before we get caught!

Mog: Kupo!

Little Girl: What's wrong, Mog?

Mog: K-Kupo!!!

Mog flew away.

Little Girl: W-Wait!!! Don't leave me here!!! Sigh... Stuck on a branch... Betrayed by my own trusted moogle... Is this how I meet my end? Mog... I'm gonna haunt you if I die here! Oh, am I hallucinating? (looking at Zidane) That person has no horn. He has a tail, though. Huh!? AHHH!!! Help!!! Don't eat me! I won't taste good! It's true! I taste awful!!!

Zidane: You heard her, Quina.

Quina: I see. Too bad. But moogle that ran away a very strange color. I go find and eat it.

Little Girl: No, don't.

Quina leaps to another area and lands hard. The shaking caused the little girl to fall off the branch. Zidane immediately caught her.

Zidane: Gotcha...!

Little Girl: Th-Thanks...

Dagger: Are you okay?

Little Girl: Yeah...

Dagger: You're not hurt?

Little Girl: I told you I'm okay! I'm not a child, like that kid in blue!

Vivi: But... You don' t look any older than me.

Little Girl: Are you kidding!? And I do have a name you know!

Eiko: The name's Eiko! Shouldn't you introduce yourself before addressing a lady?

Vivi: You introduced yourself first...

Eiko: You got a problem!?

Vivi:

Dagger: I'm Dagger, and this is Vivi.

Eiko: (to Zidane) Yeah? What about you?

Zidane: Me? I'm Zidane.

Eiko: Zidane. Alright.

Zidane: So, Miss Eiko, why did you steal from the village?

Eiko: I was hungry...

Zidane: Ha ha ha... You sound just like Quina. Hey, did s/he really go chasing after that moogle?

Eiko: Oh no... S/he's gonna eat Mog!

Dagger: I don't think Quina would eat a moogle. Do you live nearby, Eiko?

Eiko: Yeah, beyond this path. I'm sure Mog went home...

Dagger: Why don't we take her home?

Zidane: Yes, yes... Anything for my lovely wife.

Eiko: You two are married!?

Zidane: Yup. We're newlyweds.

Dagger: No, no. We're just friends.

Zidane: Well, I guess that's better than nothing...

Eiko: I wanna be your friend, too!

Zidane: Alright, then, let's go to our new friend's house.

Eiko joined Zidane's group. Zidane's group moves on. Later...

Zidane: What's that...?

We watch a movie of the view of the Iifa Tree.

Zidane: Is that the Sanctuary?

Zidane's group moves on. Later...

Zidane: What the...!?

There was a sudden shaking. Zidane's group fights Hilgigars. After Zidane's group defeats it...

Eiko: That big monster just shows up from time to time. I usually just run away.

Zidane: But you're a pretty good fighter, Eiko.

Eiko: Tee-hee. Thanks. (to Vivi) Hey, that's not the way to my house! That's the way to the Iifa Tree! This way to my place!

Vivi: I was only looking at the mountains...

Zidane: The Iifa Tree? I thought it was called Sanctuary.

Eiko: Huh? Oh, that's what the dwarves call it. Everyone else calls it the Iifa Tree.

Dagger: The Iifa Tree...?

Eiko: Let's go!

Zidane's group proceeds to Madain Sari. In there...

Eiko: Zidane! This is my home: Madain Sari, the village of summoners!

Zidane: The village of the summoners...? You live here...? (It's a pile of rubble.) Dagger?

Dagger: What happened here...? This place is in ruins.

Moogles 1: Kupo!

Moogles 2: Kupo!

Moogles 3: Kupo!

Eiko: Mocha! Moco! Chimomo!

Moogles 3: Kupo!

Moogles 4: Kupo!

Eiko: Momatose! Morrison! Where's Mog? No... Mog got eaten!? MOG!

Mog appeared.

Mog: Kup! Kupo... Kupo?

Eiko: No, I'm not mad. But don't ever leave me behind again, okay?

Mog: Kupo!

The Moogles flew into town.

Eiko: Zidane! Follow me!

In the town...

Eiko: Get to work, you guys!

Moogles 1: Kupo! Yes, ma'am.

Eiko: Mog, you stay here with me.

Mog: Kupo!

Eiko: Okay, come on!

Mog: Kupo!

Mog went into Eiko's pocket.

Zidane: Did that moogles go inside your dress?

Eiko: Yup! Mog always stays with me.

Mog came out.

Mog: Kupo!

Eiko: Zidane, come sit over here!

Zidane: (dragged) H-Hey!

Eiko: Tell me more about yourself! Tell me!

Zidane: Sure. I wanna know more about you, too, Eiko.

Eiko: Really!?

Zidane: For instance, the eidolon...

Eiko: Where are you from? How old are you? What do you do? Where are you going?

Zidane: No, what I wanna know is...

Eiko: What kind of foods do you like? What kind of eidolons do you like? What type of moogles do you like? What type of girls do you like?

Later, after the conversation...

Eiko: I've never met anyone like you before...

Zidane: Dagger? What's wrong? You look dazed.

Dagger: Oh, it's nothing.

Zidane: Do you have a fever?

Dagger: Ahhh!

Zidane: You're fine. Are you jealous?

Dagger: Why would I be jealous?

Eiko: Are you and Dagger really just friends? Seems like...you guys are...something more.

Zidane: Well... Yeah, we're more than friends.

Eiko: So? What are you guys?

Zidane: We're a team.

Eiko: A team...?

Zidane: Yeah. Vivi's also part of the team. Hey... Where did he go?

Mog came out of Eiko's pocket.

Eiko: Is it some sort of like me and the moogles?

Zidane: Something like that.

Mocha: All clean! Kupo!

Eiko: Thanks, Mocha! I'll be right there! I'm gonna start cooking! You have to come eat at my place later, okay?

Zidane: There's still stuff I want to ask her. Let's accept her invitation.

Dagger: Okay...

Eiko: I'll call you when the food's ready. Don't go too far!

Zidane proceeds to the Eidolon Wall. A moogle is guarding the entrance.

Moco: This is a restricted area!

Zidane: Restricted? What's that, then?

Moco: Kupo!?

Quina appeared.

Quina: Zidane, this place only rocks and sand. I eat star sand once, but sand here not food.

Quina jumps down really hard.

Quina: Water look clean.

Quina goes underwater looking for more food.

Moco: Squee...!!!

Zidane: Hey, don't take it so hard. S/he's a special case.

Zidane moves on.

Zidane: (to himself) Geez, what a dump. It must've been like this for at least ten years. What can Eiko possibly feed us?

Zidane then saw Vivi.

Zidane: ...Vivi? What's up? Is something wrong?

Vivi: Oh, it's nothing. I was just thinking...

Zidane: ...Well, try not to think too much. Get some rest.

Vivi: Okay. Thanks, Zidane.

Zidane tried to go in to Eiko's house.

Morrison: Kupo. Please wait. Thank you for waiting. Lady Eiko says the food will be ready soon. I'll take you to Eidolon Wall in the meantime. Please follow me.

In the entrance of Eidolon Wall...

Morrison: Moco was very proud of his role as the Eidolon Wall guard. Eiko's decision to show the Eidolon Wall to outsiders upset her. But we moogle love Eiko. He'll understand, in time.

Zidane: Why does the wall need protection?

Morrison: The Eidolon Wall has been protected by Eiko's summoner tribe for generations.

Zidane: ...Summoner tribe? I'm gonna get Dagger. She can use summon magic.

Morrison: Is that true?

Zidane finds Dagger at the entrance of Madain Sari.

Zidane: Hey, Dagger. Come with me. I'll show you something big! Summon-magic stuff.

Dagger: Summon magic?

Zidane: Yeah, it's called the Eidolon Wall!

Zidane and Dagger proceeds to Eidolon Wall.

Morrison: Please come in. The Eidolon Wall is this way.

In there...

Morrison: The Eidolon Wall is a collection of paintings. The summoner tribe painted all the eidolons they found during their research.

Dagger: These eidolons all exist?

Morrison: Kupo. This is a holy place for the summoner tribe. Lady Eiko comes here everyday to pray and burn incense for her ancestors.

Dagger: What's this one...? There's Atomos. That's Bahamut.

Zidane: What's wrong, Dagger?

Dagger: I...

Zidane: You'll get it back.

Dagger: I want to look at the murals some more.

Zidane: ...Okay.

Zidane proceeds to Eiko's house.

Moogles: KUPOOO!

Mog: Kupopo!

Inside the house...

Zidane: Wow, this looks great!

Moogles: Kupopopo!

Eiko: Welcome, Zidane! Have a seat.

Zidane: You made a lot!

Eiko: I cooked it all for you, Zidane!

Zidane: Let's eat!

Zidane's group and the moogles gathered for the meal Eiko cooked.

Eiko: (to Zidane) How is it?

Zidane: This stew taste good! The fish is just right. Hey, Eiko, where are all the summoners? Are they hiding underground or something?

Eiko: Underground? Yeah. They're all underground, sleeping the eternal sleep.

Zidane: What...?

Eiko: I'm the last survivor of my tribe. I've been living with moogles ever since my grandpa died last year.

Dagger: I'm sorry...

Eiko: Oh, don't worry about me. I'm really happy here. Ten years ago, which is four years before I was born... A natural disaster struck the village. Even the survivors suffered a great deal. But my mom and dad fell in love and had a family. Not that I remember what they look like, because they died when I was very young.

Zidane: I see...

Eiko: I've been told that when I turn 16 and my body builds a resistance to summon magic... I can leave the village with any eidolon I want! That's only a short time away! Just like the small difference between our ages, Zidane!

Zidane: But you already know how to use summon magic, Eiko.

Eiko: Well, a summoner can't choose her eidolon until she has come of age. That's why I can't choose an eidolon or leave the village until I turn 16. We just keep training until then!

Dagger: How do you train?

Eiko: How...? Oh, it's our horn. We use our horns to communicate with eidolons. How do you communicate without a horn, Dagger?

Dagger:

Eiko: I'm like a beautiful young heroine in turmoil, don't you think?

Zidane: Huh?

Eiko: You know why I'm here in this village? It was to meet you, Zidane, my beautiful shooting star...

Dagger: That's a line from Lord Avon's play 'Wishing Upon a Star.'

Eiko: How did you know!? Darn it!

Zidane: (How does Eiko know about that play? This place is far from the Mist Continent.)

Later after the meal...

Dagger: Thank you.

Vivi: Thank, Eiko!

Zidane: That was really good!

Eiko: See? Don't you wanna eat my food everyday?

Zidane: Maybe. Hey, there's some other stuff I wanna ask you.

Eiko: Maybe!? That's soooo rude of you!!! Zidane, help me clear the table! Bring the pot over to the kitchen!

Zidane took the pot to the kitchen. In the kitchen...

Eiko: So it wasn't just Dagger... Zidane is really slow, too! Those two are going nowhere fast. Well, this is good news for me!

Zidane talks to Eiko.

Zidane: Is there something on my face?

Eiko: Thanks, Zidane. Could you leave it there?

Zidane puts the pot away.

Zidane: Hey, Eiko, do you know anything about the Iifa Tree?

Eiko: What about the Iifa Tree?

Zidane: We want to go there.

Eiko: It's sealed with an eidolon. You can't get in.

Zidane: Sealed? Did you seal it, Eiko?

Eiko: Well... (So he's sharp about certain things.) It all happened before I was born, but they sealed an eidolon that we failed to summon in the Iifa Tree. It's our custom to seal a failed summon where we summon it.

Zidane: An eidolon you failed to summon...?

Eiko: But we used the power of another eidolon to seal it. Do you understand what that means? That means the sealed eidolon was so powerful that they needed another one to trap it inside.

Zidane: Sealed with the power of another eidolon, huh?

Zidane then takes a rest. During the middle of the night...

Zidane: Vivi... You better get some sleep before we leave tomorrow.

Vivi: I tried to stop worrying about things, but I just can't. I know you told me much, but...

Zidane: That's because we're different, Vivi. You don't have to do everything my way, you know?

Vivi: I want to stop... I don't wanna feel like this anymore. What if I keep feeling like this?

Zidane: Vivi... Well... In the end, it boils down to two simple choices. Either you do or you don't. You'd think with all the problems in this world, there'd be more answers. It's not fair... ..but the way things are. The choice is yours.

Vivi: Zidane...

Zidane: I just wanna protect the people I'm with. Doesn't matter whether I can or not. It's what I believe in.

Eiko is on the other side quietly eavesdropping.

Eiko: (to herself) I knew it! I was right! Zidane is the man for me! He's right. You either do, or you don't. My choice is clear! I wanna go with Zidane!

Zidane: (to Vivi) You wanna know a trick to get your mind off things?

Eiko: Okay.

Zidane: (to Vivi) This is an age-old ritual between male friends!

Eiko: Uh-huh.

Zidane: Come over here, Vivi. Let's go together. Doesn't it feel nice to let yourself go under the stars?

Eiko:

The next morning...

Dagger: Zidane, I want to come back here. When I first saw the Eidolon Wall, I was scared... But when I went inside and saw the murals, they calmed me. I want to see more.

Zidane: Sure. We'll come back after we check out the Iifa Tree.

Dagger: Thank you.

Zidane: We gotta come back and get Quina, anyway. We can't just leave him here.

Dagger: Are you coming back here for Eiko?

Zidane: Eiko is only six years old. She acts tough, but I think she's lonely.

Vivi: I haven't seen her today...

Zidane: You're right.

Eiko and the moogles surprisingly appeared.

Zidane: Eiko!

Eiko: Tee hee. You can't break the seal of the Iifa Tree without calling an eidolon.

Zidane: You're coming with us?

Eiko: Do you want me to?

Zidane: Of course I want you to come along!

Eiko: That's what I thought. Okay, I'll join your team for a while! Vivi, Dagger, let's have fun! The Iifa Tree is beyond the Conde Petie Mountain Path! Let's go!

Eiko left.

Dagger: Why are you so nice to everyone, Zidane?

Zidane: Huh? What do you mean by that?

Dagger: (mad) Forget I asked...

Dagger left.

Vivi: I think she was mad...

Zidane: You think so, too?

Morrison: Please look after Lady Eiko. Come see us if there is any trouble.

Zidane: Sure thing! Vivi, have you figured out a solution to your problem?

Vivi: Not really. But I'm moving on.

Zidane: Good!

Zidane's group proceeds to Iifa Tree. In there...

Dagger: There's Mist here...!

Zidane: So this place really must be the source of the Mist.

Vivi suddenly tripped.

Eiko: You okay?

Vivi: ...I-I'm fine.

Zidane moves forward and felt a force field.

Zidane: Whoa! What was that?

Eiko: That was the seal. It shouldn't hurt you, but are you alright?

Zidane: Yeah, it didn't hurt. Hmm... Did you say they used the power of an eidolon to seal this place?

Eiko nods "yes."

Zidane: Amazing. How do you break it?

Eiko: I'm going to ask the eidolon to come back. The summoner's horn allows us to communicate with eidolons and wild animals. I'll break the seal now. Watch! Boom boom boom! Boom boom boom! By the light of our spirits! I call upon thee! Answer my call! Wherever your soul may be!

Eiko dispelled the force field and received a Ruby.

Eiko: Finished! We can go inside now.

Zidane: Thanks!

Vivi: Was that the spell to break the seal?

Eiko: Nope. All I do is focus my thoughts into my horn.

Vivi: Then why were you...?

Eiko: That was just for show! The spell is actually much longer, but the eidolon asked me to hurry it up.

Dagger: (I didn't hear anything...)

Zidane: Alright. Let's go!

Zidane's group proceeds to the platform area.

Zidane: What's this? Looks old. I wonder who built it?

Eiko: (to Vivi) This way! Hey, are you alright?

Vivi: A-Aren't you guys scared of heights...?

Eiko: Gosh, you look so helpless. Why don't you stay here and let us handle the rest?

Vivi: No, I'm going with you guys! I have to.

Eiko: Then don't leave my side, okay?

Vivi: O-Okay. Thanks.

Zidane: Eiko, do you know anything about this place?

Eiko: Nope. This is my first time inside the Iifa Tree.

Zidane: This place looks ancient...

Zidane touches the platform.

Zidane: What the... (Try standing on it.) Alright, then!

Dagger: Zidane...

Zidane: I'll be fine Don't worry!

Zidane steps on the platform and it moves down. Zidane then jumps to the ledge.

Zidane: Here it comes again.

Zidane jumps to the platform and it went up.

Zidane: It works. I'm gonna see where it takes me. I'll call you guys over if everything is alright.

Eiko: I'm coming with you!

Dagger: Me, too.

Vivi: M-Me, too.

Zidane: Okay, we'll all go.

Zidane's group takes the platform down to the inside of Iifa Tree.

While they move on...

Zidane: Everything up there looked withered. This place looks totally different. It's so bright I can't see the bottom...

Zidane looks at the big spiral platform.

Zidane: I guess we should try to get to the bottom of this!

Eiko saw a leaf-like platform. She stands on it, but nothing happened.

Eiko: Hey, Zidane. I found something here.

Zidane: Hmm... Maybe it'll move like the last one...

Eiko: It didn't move when I got on...

Zidane: You stood on it!? Well...

Eiko: Why don't we all try getting on?

Zidane's group got on the platform.

Zidane: When I got on, I felt it respond. I guess we're in luck!

The platform moves down in a spiral way. In the platform...

Zidane: Whoa... It sure freaked me out at first, but there's no wind or anything... I guess that glowing powder is stopping the wind somehow. (to Dagger) You okay, Dagger?

Dagger: Yes... I wonder where we're going.

Zidane: Yeah...me, too.

Eiko: Maybe Mog can tell us something!

Mog came out of Eiko's pocket.

Eiko: What do you feel, here inside the Iifa Tree?

Mog: Kupo... ...Kupo? KUPO! POPO!

Eiko: Really?

Mog: Kupo!

Eiko: Alright... Thanks!

Mog: Kupopo!

Mog went into Eiko's pocket.

Zidane: Well? What's the word?

Eiko: Um, Mog senses a lot of life beneath us. Moogles are faeries, so they sense life everywhere, but Mog says there's a whole lot here!

Dagger: I wonder if agents of Kuja are down there...

Zidane: But what's the connection between Kuja and the Mist?

Eiko: !? Incoming!

Zidane's group fights Zombies. After Zidane's group defeats them...

Eiko: There are so many strange monsters here in the Iifa Tree!

Dagger: Could the Mist be causing it?

Zidane: Beats me... The Evil Forest and Gargan Roo had unique monsters, too.

Eiko: But if the Mist comes from this tree, how come it only appears on Zidane's continent?

Zidane: I guess there has to be something that channels the Mist.

Dagger: Yes, but the question is, why?

Vivi:

Dagger: Zidane...

Zidane: Hmm? What's the matter? ...Vivi?

Zidane talks to Vivi.

Zidane: What's wrong, Vivi? You've been lost in thought for a while.

Vivi: Do you remember the...factory we saw in Dali?

Dagger: Yes, the factory where black mages were being made?

Eiko: Huh? Black mages?

Dagger: They look a lot like Vivi.

Zidane: Dagger!

Dagger: Oh! I'm sorry! I didn't mean to...

Vivi: It's okay. I'm not upset anymore... about being made and everything.

Zidane: Vivi...

Vivi: Anyway, that factory had a lot of Mist inside, right?

Zidane: Oh, yeah... There was a huge machine filled with Mist.

Dagger: That's right. And there were those strange eggs we saw.

Vivi: There's gotta be a connection between them Mist, Kuja, and... the black mages.

Dagger:

Eiko: I'm so confused. !? Another one's headed this way!

Zidane's group fights Dracozombie. After defeating it...

Zidane: Hey, I can finally see the bottom.

Eiko: It's so deep!

Zidane: I don't know what's down there...but we'll soon find out!

Later the platform stopped at the lowest floor. In there...

Eiko: Come with me! Are you gonna make a helpless little girl like me go all by herself!?

Zidane: Wait! There might be some monsters lurking there!

Dagger: Say, Zidane... Mog said he sensed life down here. Do you sense anything?

Zidane: Yeah, but you sense it, too, don't you? We don't even need Mog to tell us that there's life down here.

Dagger: You're right. I can tell there's something down here.

Zidane's group looks way down the area with Mist. Zidane checks the area and suddenly...

Zidane: Is it moving...? Just my imagination. So much for Kuja. None of his lackeys are here, either. Or maybe we have to go down there? I definitely sense something down there.

Eiko: Zidane!

Zidane: What's up?

Eiko: M-Mog's saying... Something's coming from above!

Zidane: From above!? Dagger, come here! Now!

Dagger: Aaaa!

Zidane: Dagger!!! Are you alright!?

Dagger: I'm sorry! I was just startled. Is something wrong?

Eiko: Over there!

Zidane: It's them! We'd better go, too! Can you stand?

Dagger: Yes, let's go.

Eiko: Look! The wall is moving!

Vivi: You're right... It's like it's alive!

Zidane: Eiko! Vivi!

Eiko: Zidane! The wall's shaking faster!

Zidane: It's here!

Dagger: What was that!?

Suddenly, Soulcage appeared.

Soulcage: So, it wasn't Kuja.

Vivi: Huh? What's going on? I can hear a voice inside my head!

Zidane: You just said Kuja! Where is he!?

Soulcage: I do not know.

Dagger: What are you doing here!?

Zidane: Are you the one who makes the Mist!?

Soulcage: It is not produced... Mist is a by-product of the refining process. It is discharged through the roots.

Vivi: Discharged?

Dagger: So it's sent to other continents through the roots, right?

Zidane: But why!? Why would you do that!?

Soulcage: I contaminate the other continents with Mist to stimulate the fighting instinct. This, in turn, leads to war among the leaders of nations, and then to the fall of civilization. Kuja merely puts the by-product to a different use.

Vivi: A different use!? What is Kuja trying to do!?

Soulcage: I cannot lie. Kuja used the waste product to make weapons. Weapons...like yourself.

Vivi: !?

Eiko: He's really ticking me off! Can I kill him?

Zidane: Wait, Eiko! What kind of weapons did Kuja make?

Soulcage: Kuja called them black mages, dark spawn of the Mist.

Zidane: !?

Dagger: So the factory in Dali was really...

Soulcage: Defeat me, and no more Mist will flow. And then no more weapons like this puppet here will be made. Answer me, puppet. Do you deny your very birth?

Zidane: Why, you-

Vivi: No more!

Dagger: Vivi?

Vivi: I won't let you make any more instruments of murder!

Eiko: Way to go, Vivi! I know it must be hard for you. We can knock off

this rat now, right?

Zidane: Alright! Let's bust him up! Who knows, it might even lure Kuja here!

Soulcage: I have seen the end of my thousand-year life, and it is not now. You cannot stop me. It is futile even to try.

Zidane's group fights Soulcage. After Zidane's group defeats it, the area is suddenly shaking.

Zidane: Uh oh! Let's get outta here!

We watch a movie of Mist disappearing from the world. After Zidane's group made it out successfully...

Eiko: Wow, the air's so clear! The Iifa Tree looks so pretty now. Will this clear up your Mist Continent?

Zidane: I think so. Now, let's see if Kuja shows up. ...Vivi?

Vivi: Zidane... Did I do the right thing? It said that black mages are made from the Mist, right? When I thought about how other black mages were being made for war... I didn't want that to happen, no matter what. Now, there'll be no more new black mages. I think they'll all hate me.

Eiko: No way! Listen to me. You should never lie to yourself. After all, your brothers wouldn't want you to do that.

Vivi: Do you really think so? Do you think...they'll understand?

Eiko: Of course! They're your brothers. It'll be alright. (to Mog) Huh? What is it, Mog? Moco!?

Moco: Eiko!

Eiko: What's the matter? Why did you come all this way?

Moco told Eiko everything.

Eiko: No way! Okay, I'll be right back!

Moco: Alright, I'll go on ahead and tell the others.

Moco left.

Eiko: You guys are going to wait here for Kuja, right? I gotta go back to the village!

Zidane: Wait, Eiko! What's up?

Eiko: Someone stole something precious from the village!

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane: We'll go with you, Eiko!

Eiko: Thanks, but what about Kuja!?

Zidane: Madain Sari isn't that far. He can wait.

Zidane's group goes back to Madain Sari. In there...

Eiko: I'm home! I'M HOME!!!

The Moogles arrived.

Eiko: Moco told me the news. Are you alright?

Morrison: Come now! Talk later, kupo!

Moogle 1: Kupo!

Moogle 2: Kupo!!!

Eiko followed the Moogles back to her house.

Zidane: H-Hey, Eiko? We'd better follow her!

In Eiko's house...

Zidane: What's going on, Eiko?

Eiko: It's... It's... The precious stone that has been passed down in this village for generations is gone! My grandparents said... They said that we should take care of it because it's a symbol of the summoners' heritage.

Zidane: Well...how about crying for a change? It'll help.

Eiko: I'm not gonna cry! I'm a grown-up now, and crying won't help one bit!

Zidane: Alright. How about we start looking for clues?

Dagger: I'll help, too.

Eiko: <Hiccup.> Is it... <Hiccup.> It is my fault? <Hiccup.> Is it 'cause I broke my promise and opened the Iifa Tree's seal? <Hiccup.> Everyone...everyone was watching over the stone.

Zidane: Eiko? It just happened that way! It wasn't your fault.

Eiko: <Hiccup.>

Zidane: Besides, we're the ones who made you open the seal! You understand, right? The real villain is the thief who stole it. So, let's just look for some clues and get the stone back, okay?

Eiko: <Hiccup.> Okay! I wasn't going to cry, you know. After all, I'm a grown-up!

Zidane: We know, Eiko. But if you feel like crying, just cry.

Eiko: I'm gonna go pray to my grandparents! I'll be right back.

Eiko left.

Zidane: If you need to, you can cry, too, Dagger. My shoulder's always available.

Dagger: Yeah, thanks. What about you, Zidane? What do you do when you need to cry?

Zidane: Oh, I get real clingy when I'm sad!

Dagger: Cut it out!

Zidane: Hey, I was serious.

Suddenly, Zidane and Dagger heard Eiko's scream.

Zidane: !!!

Dagger: !!! I heard a scream. It sounded like Eiko!

Zidane: Dammit! The thief was still here!

Vivi quickly came in.

Vivi: Zidane, I saw her! It's that girl from Fossil Roo! She took Eiko... They went to the Eidolon Wall!

Zidane: Let's go!

Zidane proceeds to Eidolon Wall. In the entrance...

Morrison: Look what happened to Eiko... The ancestors will be displeased. Tell us if there's anything we can do for you, kupo!

Zidane: Hmm... (Peek inside.)

Eiko is being held my Lani.

Eiko: This is no way to treat a lady!

Lani: What's this wing ornament on your back? It makes you so easy to pick up.

Eiko: My grandpa gave it to me! Get your grubby hands off it!

Lani: Oh, shut up. Just be still until he gets here.

Zidane checks on Mog and then attempts to save Eiko.

Lani: Well, so there's my good sir knight.

Zidane: What have you done to Eiko!?

Lani: She was too rambunctious, so I put her to sleep with a sleeping weed.

Zidane: Sleeping weed, eh? Then she's probably sleeping well.

Dagger: If it's my pendant you're after, then leave the others out of it!

Lani: No can do. This is way too convenient to pass up! Hand over the pendant, and I'll hand over the girl, capice? What happened to the pendant that you always have on!?

Zidane: I have it.

Lani: Oh, you really are a good knight. Now, cough it up already!

Zidane: First, tell me something. Was it you who stole the village stone?

Lani: Queen Brahne is after the royal pendant. I found another jewel just like it in this village! I'm glad I came all this way looking for it! Now, hand it over!

Zidane: (If only Eiko was conscious...)

Lani: Hold on! You're plotting something, aren't you? Stay right there!

Zidane: Grr!

Lani: (to Vivi) You, black mage!

Vivi: Huh? M-Me?

Lani: Bring me the pendant! Remember, do as I say if you value this brat's life!

Vivi: Zidane...

Zidane: Do it, Vivi.

Vivi: O-Okay...

Zidane hands the pendant to Vivi.

Lani: Hahaha...

Red-headed Man: Hold it!

The red-headed man jumped down to the scene.

Lani: Aaaa!

Zidane: I dunno who you are, but thanks!

Red-headed Man:

Eiko: <Yawn.>

Zidane: Yo! Can you stand?

Eiko: Huh? What's going on? !!! Where's that old hag?

Lani: Oh, that's it! Who are you calling a hag!?

Eiko: You!

Zidane: So, the tables turn! Now, hand over the jewel you stole!

Lani: What are you tryin' to do, Red!? I thought you're supposed to be the number one bandit!

Red-headed Man: I'm not here to help. I just want it to be fair.

Lani: What are you talking about?

Red-headed Man: Leave the jewel and get out of here.

Lani: What!? We're partners on this job!

Red-headed Man: I don't work with hostage-taking scumbags. Now, get lost. Or...would you rather fight me?

Lani: Mark my words! I'll collect the bounty on YOU someday!

Lani left the scene.

Red-headed Man: Now, fight me!

Zidane: Just a second here. What's going on?

Red-headed Man: I told you. I'm not here to help. I just want to level the playing field.

Zidane: Fair enough. Let's do it.

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane: It's okay. I was just looking for more ways to impress you!

Zidane fights the red-headed man. After Zidane wins the fight...

Red-headed Man: I...I lost? Go on. Finish me!

Zidane: Can you stand?

Red-headed Man:

Zidane: Give back what you stole.

Red-headed Man:

The red-headed man gave the stone back to Zidane.

Zidane: Eiko, I got it back!

Red-headed Man: Now, finish me!

Zidane: You wanna die that bad? I just spared your life.

Red-headed Man: So you want to banish me, then?

Zidane: You can go if ya want. I won't follow you.

Red-headed Man: Aha! Trying to trick me, eh?

Zidane: Trick you?

Red-headed Man: I tried to kill you! Why are you letting me go?

Zidane: The fight's over, and we're both still alive. Good enough, right? We got back what was stolen from us, after all.

Red-headed Man: Listen to you. I lost to some spineless thief.

Zidane: The sly eagle doesn't kill at whim.

Red-headed Man:

The red-headed man left. Zidane gave the stone to Eiko.

Zidane: Keep that in a safe place.

Eiko: I will! Thanks, Zidane! Well!? You're not going to leave me alone after what just happened, are you!?

Vivi: Huh?

Eiko: I'm going.

Dagger:

Zidane: Shall we?

Zidane and Dagger follows Vivi and Eiko back to Eiko's house. In there...

Vivi: She's been quiet the whole time.

Eiko: Zidane, let me ask you something. My grandfather told me not to leave the village until my sixteenth birthday... But I want to go with you guys! I really do! Do you think it's okay if I leave this village?

Zidane: I'll agree if that's what you want. Eiko, come with us. Forget what your grandpa said.

Eiko:

Zidane: It doesn't matter what I say. You've already made up your mind.

Eiko:

Zidane: Don't you have something to say to her, Vivi?

Vivi: Huh?

Eiko:

Vivi: Remember what you taught me at the Iifa Tree? You said I shouldn't ever lie to myself. I'll try to be more honest with my own feelings... You should, too, Eiko...

Eiko: Hmmm... I forgot my own advice, Vivi! Thanks! I'll wear the jewel as an earring. It'll be okay then, right, Zidane?

Eiko puts the Memory Earring on.

Dagger: Eiko? I think Mog want to talk to you.

Mog: Ku-Kupo.

Eiko:

Mog: Kuuupoh!

Eiko: What? You think I'm mad at you? I'm furious! You went off without me again! You promised me you wouldn't! What would you do if you went off and got into trouble!?

Mog: Kupo...

Eiko: Oh well. Thank goodness we're both alright.

Vivi: You're always nice to Mog, aren't you, Eiko?

Eiko: Well, yeah. We're best friends, after all! We were born on the same day, and we have always been together. This is our friendship ribbon! Mog gave it to me! Mog, do you have the ribbon I gave you?

Mog: Kupo!

Eiko: This is the one I gave to Mog!

Dagger left.

Eiko: It's too big for her now, but once we're both sophisticated ladies, we'll wear them together!

Mog: Kupo!

Eiko: Maybe then, Zidane, you'll dance with me? Zidane?

Zidane: I didn't know Mog was a girl...

Later...

Zidane: I wonder where Dagger went...?

Zidane searches outside of the house and heard a song.

Zidane: I can hear a song... Dagger...? From down there? Dagger, you there?

Zidane found Dagger on a boat.

Dagger: Zidane...

Zidane: It's okay. Keep singing. 'Cause it's our song, right? I'm surprised you found this place. You got the talent to be a bandit! How 'bout you and me team up? We'll call ourselves 'The Betrothed.'

Dagger: My talent's up to snuff, but that name isn't.

Zidane: Hehehe. You're really something these days.

Dagger: If I am, I must gotten it from you.

Zidane: Naw... It's all because you made the effort to learn.

Dagger: No, it's because you stuck with me. Without you, I couldn't have made it to Lindblum, much less seen a whole new continent. Everything I tried to do on my own was a total failure. I couldn't stop my mother... At times I almost lost hope... You help me so much... Not just you, either.

Zidane: Yeah... Vivi and Eiko helped out at the Iifa Tree. Quina was real helpful when we left the continent. Freya, Steiner... and even Beatrix, who I thought was our enemy.

Dagger: I haven't forgotten... I want to believe everyone is alright, but sometimes I just can't.

Zidane jumped aboard on the boat.

Dagger: I hope I can live up to the hopes of everyone who has helped me.

Zidane: You don't have to feel so responsible, Dagger.

Dagger: But I do!

Zidane: Nobody wants you to feel that way. They didn't do it all for you, either. Each was following his own path.

Dagger: His own...path? Well, what about you?

Zidane: Huh?

Dagger: Why did you come with me?

Zidane: Hey, that's Ipsen's line.

Dagger: Ipsen? Who's that?

Zidane: Ipsen is a character from a play, but he's a real-life adventurer. I think the play is based on his adventures. It kinda goes like this... Ipsen and his good friend Colin worked at a tavern in Treno. One day, Ipsen got a letter. The letter was so wet from rain that most of the writing was illegible. The only part he could read said "Come back home." Nowadays, we have airships and stuff, but back then, it was really hard to travel. He didn't know why he had to go back, but he got some time off, gathered his things, and set out on his journey home. He walked a thousand leagues through the Mist. Sometimes he was attacked by vicious monsters, but he made it, because his friend Colin was by his side. And then, after much time on the road... He had to ask Colin something. "Why did you come with me?"

Dagger: And? What was Colin's answer?

Zidane: 'Only because I wanted to go with you.'

The boat moved out of the tunnel.

Dagger: Zidane... I... ..

Zidane: Dagger?

Dagger: Can't you... Can't you hear the song?

Zidane: Huh!? Yeah... It's that song!

Dagger: How come... Who's singing it!? !!! The sunset makes the Eidolon Wall look like it's on fire! I've seen this somewhere before...

Zidane: What? Where?

We watch a movie of Dagger standing up and thinking of the flashbacks.
Then suddenly...

Zidane: (holding Dagger) Dagger! Dagger!? Wake up!

Dagger is unconscious. Later in Eiko's house...

Zidane: Where's Vivi?

Eiko: He's sleeping. I don't wanna wake him up.

Zidane: Well?

Dagger: I have no memory of my early childhood. I never really thought about it. Besides, nobody ever told me. I was raised in Alexandria...but only from the age of six or so.

Zidane: Six!? So where were you till then?

Dagger: Until then... Until I turned six... I must've been here, in Madain Sari.

Outside...

Dagger: I still can't remember everything. Some things are like they're shrouded in fog. But I do remember one thing... About ten years ago, an unbelievably huge hurricane hit this village. That's as far as I remember. That day, I...I was with my true mother on a little boat, far from the village. There's a cove behind Eiko's house, right? The boat I was on was just like the one there. It all came back to me when I heard that song on the boat.

Zidane: That song is from Madain Sari... So that's why nobody else knows it.

In the Eidolon Wall...

Eiko: (to Dagger) How did you get to Alexandria? How come you got to be a princess? How come you don't have a summoner's horn?

Dagger: I don't know. But maybe Doctor Tot can tell me. About the lady who protected me from the storm as the boat lurched about in the waves... My biological mother, who died on that boat.

Zidane: (The woman she thought was her mother became someone else, and her true mother was already dead...) (Dagger has lost two mothers...)

Dagger: I used to pray every day here, at the Eidolon Wall.

Eiko: You, too?

Dagger: You pray here, too, Eiko?

Eiko nods "yes."

Dagger: I'm so happy I remembered.

Eiko: Dagger! Welcome home!

Dagger: So glad to be back.

Eiko: Ahaha.

Dagger: What?

Eiko: I just realized I'm not alone anymore! Yep, I made up my mind! Zidane, Dagger, I'm going with you! I'll be breaking my promise to my grandpa, but I wanna go! Besides, grandpa always told me to be honest with myself!

Dagger: I don't know what the future holds... But I want to finish what I came here for.

Zidane: So do I! Let's all go together!

Eiko: Come on, Dagger, let's go pray together!

Dagger: Alright!

The next morning...

Dagger: (I still don't know what I should do...) (By the time we defeat Kuja and return to Alexandria...)

Eiko: Grandpa, I'll be back soon!

Vivi: Oh, you're coming with us!?

Eiko: Hey! Why the long face!?

Vivi: Oh, nothing... My face is always like this.

Eiko: Mog's coming, too! Mog!!!

The Moogles arrived and says "Kupo!"

Morrison: Lady Eiko! Now, don't forget that you'll always have a home in Madain Sari. Don't let our memory become a burden. You must always be light-hearted and free. Thoughts of the Eidolon Wall will always lift your heart.

Mog went into Eiko's pocket. The red-headed man appeared.

Zidane: What now? You want some more, eh?

Red-headed Man: The victor rules, the defeated dies. You know the rules. Your actions yesterday were incomprehensible to me. Tell me! Why didn't you kill me!?

Zidane: Well, that's a tough question... Are you really that happy that I let you live?

Red-headed Man: I'd rather die as a warrior than live as a beggar.

Zidane: Then come with me.

Dagger: Zidane!?

Vivi: What!?

Red-headed Man: What are you after?

Zidane: Follow me and maybe you'll understand. Besides, you're pretty good in a fight. We could use someone like you. We're hunting a man down.

Red-headed Man: (Hmph. His only constant is his unpredictability...)

Zidane: Huh? You say somethin'?

Red-headed Man: Very well. I'll find out what makes you so strong.

Zidane: What's your name?

Red-headed Man: Call me what you will.

Zidane: Hmm... Lani called you 'Red,' right?

Amarant: Some call me the Flaming Amarant.

Zidane: Fine. We'll call you Amarant. The more the merrier. Let's decide our marching order.

Zidane chose Amarant, Dagger, and Eiko to fight.

Zidane: Alright. We'll do fine. Just follow me! Next stop, the Iifa Tree!

Zidane's group proceeds to Iifa Tree. In there...

Zidane: There's still a little Mist, but at least there's no more coming out. That must mean Kuja isn't here yet.

Amarant: What happened to the Mist?

Eiko: We beat the beast that breathes it. So much for the Mist Continent!

Amarant: No more Mist...? (They must possess incredible powers to accomplish such a feat.)

Suddenly...

Dagger: Zidane, there's a silver dragon!

Zidane: It's him! He flew from the ruins of Burmecia riding a silver dragon! It's Kuja alright! And he's hiding that dragon!

Now we are with Kuja.

Kuja: Oh, how I've longed for this day. ...the day I might finally cast away this mask to reveal my true self. Now it no longer matters if the Iifa Tree is liberated! It means nothing to me! Mwahaha... The tree is so beautiful! Its beauty becomes the great mother tree that lives among the stars! Silver Dragon, let us watch the drama unfold from the trunk of Iifa. No one shall interrupt us there.

Zidane's group moves on. Later...

Zidane: We'll pass the trunk if we go farther. Kuja went down that trunk.

Eiko: Say, Zidane... How are we gonna get up there?

Zidane: Can't we climb there?

Eiko: Not me!

Vivi: M-Me neither.

Dagger: I don't think I can, either.

Zidane: We came all this way... Now what?

Amarant: What's the problem? You should just go by yourself!

Zidane: We gotta go face Kuja together.

Amarant: How did this wimp end up beating me?

Amarant rudely walked into Vivi, Dagger, and Eiko.

Zidane: Hey, Amarant! Watch where you're walking!

Eiko: You almost knocked me down!

Amarant: 'He who hesitates is lost.' You'd best remember that.

Zidane: Well, I prefer 'My way or the highway.'

Amarant: Whatever. Like you actually have a plan.

Eiko: Oh yeah, smarty-pants!? Don't forget you're the one that lost to Zidane.

Amarant: Shut up, brat.

Zidane: A plan...huh? That's right, Amarant! You owe me one, remember? It's payback time!

Amarant: Shoot.

Zidane: There's some gargant grass around here, so a gargant can't be far. I want you to catch one for me. Then we can all get on and ride it to the top.

Amarant: Why should I do all that when I could just take the kids up myself?

Zidane: Huh...?

Amarant: (How'd I ever let this dimwit beat me?)

Eiko: H-Hey!

Vivi: Whoa!

Amarant carried Vivi and Eiko down.

Zidane: He sure has spirit. Alright, Dagger... I'll just carry you piggyback.

Dagger: Huh? Hey! Zidane! Wait just a-

The screen switches to Kuja.

Kuja: The weak lose their freedom to the strong. Such is the way of the strong. And it is the providence of nature that only the strong survive. That is why I needed strength. I learned of powers that would daunt even him...over ten years ago. Such a long time... Now my forces are ready to strike! Ahh... The suspense is terrible! So they've come this far, have they? Perfect. I'll warm up on them until the elephant-lady shows up.

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Zidane: Thanks, Amarant!

Amarant: Now we're even. Show me what you guys can do.

Dagger: There's Kuja!

Zidane: Yeah. Get ready, guys!

Vivi: Kuja... Maker of black mages...

Eiko: Any enemy of Zidane is an enemy of mine!

Zidane: Okay, let's go!

Zidane's group approaches to where Kuja is.

Dagger: You are Kuja, correct? My name is... ..Princess Garnet Til Alexandros. I wish to ask you something. Was it really you who persuaded my mother to start the war-

Kuja: The war that threw the entire Mist Continent into chaos?

Vivi: And you made everyone...the black mages into instruments of war!?

Kuja: Oh, dear... The princess has such a bloodthirsty little puppet. I don't have the power to do such a thing. I just gave them a little recipe. Begin with broth of Mist, add fermented souls, and boil... Then, pour genuine black magic into a mixing bowl and heat to-

Vivi: Stop it!

Kuja: I'm not done telling how to make soulless toys out of the dregs of souls!

Zidane: Dregs of souls? You mean Mist!?

Kuja: First, you don't want to listen, now you start asking question? Oh, brother... But you're not ready yet!

Dagger: Why, you-don't you feel anything!? Taking the lives of so many...

Kuja: Spare me the lecture. Lives come and go all the time. What's the

big deal? Speaking of warmongers, why...what about that mother of yours, Princess? She said she won't feel alive until she has everything! It breaks my heart to see such greed! The war was my fault? No, no! Your mother wanted it! All I did was give her a little push!

Dagger: Liar! My mother was sweet and kind. You changed her!

Kuja: Mwahaha... So the curtain rises! Perfect, my canary. Let me show you the truth about your mother! First Act: The End of the Ugly Desire. It's showtime!

We watch a movie of the Alexandrian battleships appearing near Iifa Tree.

Brahne: Bwahahaha! Kuja! So you finally decided to show your girly face here! You're all that stands between me and total domination! Gehehe! But I haven't forgotten all you've done for me! In return, I will show you the ultimate power! (radios all units) Attention, all hands! Order the black mages to focus all their magical energies into a single spell! Lay suppressing fire upon Kuja until the casting is finished! Fire! Fire at will!!!

In the other battleship...

Senior Officer: Orders from Her Majesty! Black mages, focus all your magical energy into a single spell!

Now we are with Zidane's group.

Dagger: I...I can't believe it!

Kuja: Your mother isn't satisfied with just one continent! Her ugliness and stupidity are truly impressive. Ahh...everything is proceeding as I have foreseen.

Zidane: What're you talking about!?

Kuja: You're just the opening number. Time for the real show.

Zidane: We won't let you get away!

Kuja: The Mist may be created no more, but it still lurks in caves and forests, right?

Zidane: Huh!?

Kuja: I can make monsters with magic! Come forth, spawn of Mist!

Zidane's group fights Mistodons. After defeating it, Kuja got away.

Amarant: So, two of your enemies are dukin' it out? Why not just leave 'em, and finish off the winner. My money's on Kuja.

The screen switches to Kuja.

Kuja: Hahaha! Foolish Brahne! Your prized cannons are useless against the spawn of Mist! Mwahaha... But even a fool like you knows that there is only one path you can take, right? Stupid elephant-lady! Why don't you hesitate? Very well... I'll make the first move. I'll give you a clean target. You can't miss! Silver Dragon, descend!

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Zidane: Amarant's right. Let's split before we get dragged in.

Dagger: No... I can't... I can't let anything happen to my mother.

Zidane: Dagger?

Dagger: Zidane, I... I have to save her!

Zidane: Uhh, Dagger? She extracted eidolons from you and started a war!

Dagger: I still don't want her to die!

Zidane: But she didn't care one bit whether you lived or died! You don't have to call her mother anymore!

Dagger: She's my only mother! I don't care if you don't understand! (to Eiko) Eiko, you said there was an eidolon imprisoned near here, right?

Eiko: Um, yeah.

Dagger: Please! Tell me where!

Eiko: It's a long way down. You see the place with lots of roots? That's it.

Dagger: There. I see it.

Dagger left.

Eiko: Dagger, don't go alone!

Zidane's group fights Mistodon. After defeating it...

Amarant: Hehe... This is turning into quite a show.

Eiko: Anyone can get emotional at a time like this! Give her a break! Zidane, let's go. Dagger's in danger all by herself.

Zidane: Yeah... Let's go after her.

Zidane's group proceeds to area where Dagger is. The screen switches to Dagger.

Dagger: In sense the eidolon's power! Now... Now I can save my mother! (Please help me...)

Dagger received Aquamarine.

Dagger: ...No! I can't save my mother with this eidolon!

Zidane's group arrived.

Eiko: Dagger! What's wrong? Can't you free it?

Dagger: No, I have it. I sense it's a great eidolon. But...but...

Eiko: I don't believe it! This is the legendary sea serpent Leviathan!

Vivi: Leviathan!?

Eiko: An eidolon wipes out its enemies with a huge tidal waves! I'm sorry, Dagger!

Dagger: No, it's not your fault. But my mother's still in danger!

Meanwhile in the battleships...

Cannoneer: Isn't her Majesty ready yet!? All remaining ammunition was spent on that last wave of monsters! The next wave will chew us up unless we pull out now!

Senior Officer: That is not our decision! Get back to your post, soldier!

The screen switches to Queen Brahne in her battleship.

Alexandrian Soldier: Your Majesty, the black mages have completed their preparations.

Brahne: That insolent whelp! Now I can finish him off! Come! Draconic Seedling! Bahamut, King of Dragons!

We watch movie of Bahamut being summoned and blowing fire at Kuja. It had no effect and Kuja descends with the Silver Dragon.

Amarant: I've heard the stories, but I never thought summoning could be so powerful. (If Zidane is after their power, I'd better watch out...)

Dagger: Wow... Now we can win! And Mother won't have to die! Eiko, don't you think... What's wrong?

Eiko: Mog... She's terrified!

Dagger: How come? Don't you know? That's the last eidolon, Bahamut, the Dragon King! He'll win for sure!

The screen switches to Kuja.

Kuja: Blood... Hahahaha... Excellent, Bahamut! Power, mobility... You are truly the best! You even hurt me...a little. And you, Brahne... Your tragic role in this drama now comes to an end! I'm sure you'll enjoy the second act from your soul's hellish prison, since the stage will be your former home! The final act will take us away from Gaia, and I will kill my nemesis...with my own hand! Hahaha! Everything is according to plan.

We watch a movie of Kuja summoning the eye scope from the sky and it captures Bahamut. Bahamut is controlled by the eye scope. Suddenly, Bahamut burns Queen Brahne, her battleship, and the other battleships. Kuja got away. Later...

Zidane: (to himself) I don't know why Bahamut attacked the one who summoned him. But we found Queen Brahne on the beach, next to her escape pod. She could hardly move. And I thought she'd come to a stop any second. I hate Kuja a lot. But I hate Brahne a lot, too... ..so much that I wanted this to happen to her. I should be happy, but... Once I saw Dagger start to cry, I didn't know how I should feel. I kind of wanted

to cry, too...

The screen switches to Dagger with the dying Brahne.

Brahne: ...I...can hear...my daughter's voice.

Dagger: Yes, Mother! I'm here! Right here...

Brahne: I...I am empty now... Free... Free...of that...terrible...greed...

Dagger: Mother...

Brahne: I haven't...felt this way...since I saw that play...with you...and your father. I led...Alexandria...down...the path...of ruin... The people...will be...happier...with you...on the throne...

Brahne stopped breathing and died.

Zidane: (to himself) We went back to Alexandria on Queen Brahne's escape pod. We also brought... Dagger's mother with us...

Later in Alexandria's resting place...

Tot: This way, Princess.

Dagger: Steiner, Beatrix... How horrible that her life had to end this way. I still can't believe that has happened...

Beatrix: Princess, it was my...

Steiner: No! It was my fault!

Dagger: Thank you, both of you... I must now carry the burden of ruling Alexandria alone. Will both of you please help me during this, my time of need?

Steiner: Yes, Princess!

Beatrix: Certainly!

Dagger: Thank you.

Dagger, Steiner, and Beatrix approached the tombstone.

Tot: Princess, here is a wreath of roses, your mother's favorite. The townspeople sent it as an offering for the queen's grave. True, Queen Brahne had been acting quite erratic before her death... ..but the people are still very fond of her, as you can see.

Dagger placed the wreath on the tomb and everyone paid their last respects to Brahne.

Dagger: Mother... I shall become a great queen!

We watch a movie of Dagger walking away from the tomb and watched the view of Alexandria.

END OF DISC 2

The boat carried Dagger's crew back to the dock of Alexandria Castle.

Tot: Princess, we have arrived at the castle.

Beatrix: She won't be a princess for much longer, Doctor Tot.

Tot: Ha ha ha... Indeed. I shall have to call you 'Queen Garnet' after the coronation. I must make preparations for the crowning of our new queen. General Beatrix, Master Steiner, will you help her?

Beatrix and Steiner salutes.

Tot: Princess, please watch your step.

Dagger: Doctor Tot...

Tot: Princess... I know how hard this must be. But I will be by your side. Please take the throne with full confidence.

Steiner: Three more days until the crowning of a new queen... What a day!

Later in Alexandria bar...

Ruby: We ain't seen each other in ages! Why the sour puss, partner?

Marcus: What happened? Maybe that Dagger chick dumped him.

Zidane: (depressed)

Cinna: Bingo...

Ruby: This ain't like you at all, Zidane!

Cinna: H-Hey, Ruby! I heard you started a mini-theater.

Ruby: That's right, darlin'! My plays are a hit!

Blank: Cool! Let's go watch!

Marcus: Yeah!

Ruby: Alright, cowboys! (to Zidane) Zidane... You ain't comin', are ya? That's awright, darlin'. Come on over whenever you want. Let's go, boys!

Outside...

Ruby: This way, everyone!

Vivi is walking and was ran into by Blank.

Blank: Oops! Sorry... Huh!? Hey, Vivi!

Vivi: Hello...

Blank: I haven't seen you since you left Alexandria Castle! How are ya?

Vivi: Well, a lot of things happened, but I'm doing fine. How about you? What have you been doing since we left the castle?

Blank: Me? Let's see... Oh yeah, it's been crazy since you guys escaped!

Rusty, that rat chick, Freya, and... ..what's her face, that girl general of Alexandria...

Marcus: Beatrix.

Blank: Yeah, the three of them got totally worked. Marcus and I had to carry 'em out on our backs! M-Marcus!?

Marcus: We gotta get goin' before Ruby gets mad at us again.

Blank: Oh yeah, she hates it when we're late... Sorry, Vivi. I'll see you later!

Vivi moves on. He later talked to Blank.

Blank: Yo, Vivi! Can you do me a favor?

Vivi: What is it?

Blank: I want you to see Ruby's play with us.

Vivi: Hmm... Sure, I like plays.

Blank: Cool! Go down the staircase behind us. That's where Ruby's theater is.

Marcus: Bro...

Vivi goes downstairs. In there...

Ruby: Blank!!! Don't ya know I HATE it when yer late!? How many times do I gotta tell ya!? Huh? Who are you? Strange, kinda...

Cinna: Hey, Vivi!

Ruby: Is he a friend or yers, Cinna?

Vivi: Hello, Uncle Cinna.

Cinna: I'm not old enough to be your uncle! I'm younger than I look!

Ruby: Hahaha... Yer a funny one. I like you! Wanna see my play little fella?

Vivi: U-Um, yeah.

Ruby: Oh, what a sweetie! I like you even more! We'll get rollin' in a minute. Sit wherever you want.

Marcus and Blank came downstairs.

Marcus: I think your plan worked.

Blank: Ain't nothing to it.

Ruby: Blank, we'll talk later!

Marcus: Busted...

Meanwhile in Dagger's room...

Dagger: Steiner?

Steiner: Yes, Princess!

Dagger: Um... I'd like to find Zidane and talk to him...

Steiner: Princess, you have more important matters at hand! You live in a different world now!

Tot came in.

Tot: O-Oh. What's happening here? Princess, it is time for you to get changed. (to Beatrix) General Beatrix, will you help her?

Beatrix: Yes, sir!

Tot: Oh, there is something I must give you, Princess.

Tot gave Dagger, Opal, Topaz, and Amethyst.

Tot: Those stones contain your power, which Queen Brahne forcibly... Well, that is all in the past...

Tot is about to leave.

Tot: Master Steiner...? Master Steiner, do you intend to stay here and watch?

Steiner: N-No, I am not... E-Excuse me!

Steiner salutes and both Steiner and Tot leaves.

Dagger: Beatrix... I'd like to see Zidane... Please?

Beatrix: Now may not be a good time.

Dagger: Even you agree with Steiner.

Beatrix: Your Highness...

Dagger: I know... It's okay.

The screen switches to Eiko.

Eiko: With Dagger out of the picture, now's my chance to win Zidane's heart! First, I'll write him a love letter. I'm gonna make it the most romantic letter ever written!

Tot came out of Dagger's room.

Tot: But she must persevere. The people of Alexandria are watching.

Eiko: He looks pretty smart! Hey, you look like the bookish type!

Tot: Ha ha ha... What gives you that impression?

Eiko: You really want me to explain?

Tot: Oh, yes. I'm very curious.

Eiko: Where should I start...? First, your beard! Second, your nerdy hat! Third, your thick eyeglasses! All signs of a nerdy philosopher!

Tot: Ha ha... You don't hold back, do you?

Eiko: Hey, are you a writer?

Tot: Well, yes. I did make my living as a writer for a while.

Eiko: Will you help me write a letter?

Tot: A letter? Gladly, if you think I can be of assistance.

Eiko: Okay, then. Follow me.

Tot: (to himself) That girl has a horn... That horn...

Tot thinks inside his memory.

Tot: I had completely forgotten about it until now... I'd never been as surprised as I was that day. A ship drifted ashore after a storm... Inside the ship were a woman and a baby girl... The woman was dead, but the girl was still breathing... Imagine my surprise as I looked into the girl's face! Because the girl... looked exactly like Princess Garnet who had just passed away. With one exception... She had a horn! A human with a horn... Where had she come from? The king ordered the girl's horn removed. The girl cried out in pain... He and his wife, Queen Brahne, decided to raise the girl as Princess Garnet... But that girl who spoke to me... Could she be related to Princess Garnet...?

Eiko: Hey, will you hurry up?

Tot: Oh, excuse me.

Meanwhile in Dagger's room, Dagger is wearing a dress.

Beatrix: Princess, you look splendid.

Dagger: Thank you. By the way... There is something I must tell you, Beatrix.

Beatrix: Yes, Princess?

Dagger: I am not my mother's... I mean, Queen Brahne is not my real mother.

Beatrix: Princess Garnet... Doctor Tot has already informed us. However... My allegiance to you remains the same, if not stronger.

Dagger: Beatrix... Thank you...

The screen switches to Eiko and Tot.

Eiko: It's finished! Zidane will fall in love with me the instant he reads this letter! Thanks, Mister!

Tot: Ha ha... It was my pleasure, my lady.

Eiko: Oh, I forgot to tell you. My name is Eiko! I'm from Madain Sari!

I hope to see you again! Buh-Bye!

Eiko left with a written letter.

Tot: From Madain Sari...? Madain Sari is the village of summoners... But I thought it was only a legend. What could this mean...?

Eiko moves on.

Eiko: Oh, I can't wait to hand this letter to Zidane! Where did he go, anyway?

Eiko runs, then Baku was in Eiko's way. Eiko fell and her shirt was caught on the fence.

Eiko: AHHH!!! HELP!!!

Baku: Hey, are ya okay?

Eiko: C-C-Can't breathe...!!!

Baku: Sorry! I didn't see ya jump out. But yer too high up. I can't getcha down! Gwahahaha!

Eiko: Stop laughing, you poop! Oh, shoot. My letter...

Eiko dropped her letter my mistake.

Eiko: Hey, if you can't get me down... ...deliver that letter to Zidane! Alright!?

Baku: To Zidane? Yeah, no problem. Gwahahaha!

Baku left.

Eiko: (struggling) What am I supposed to do now!?

The screen switches to Baku.

Baku: Hey, the boat ain't here!

Steiner and the knights appear.

Steiner: Castle patrol, completed! Huh? Why, if it isn't Baku, the leader of Tantalus!

Baku: Who just called my name? Oh, it's you.

Laudo, Pluto Knight IV: Should we capture him?

Steiner: No, he saved my life. You may go. I will handle this.

Knight: Yes, sir!

Laudo, Pluto Knight IV: Yes, sir!

Baku: Ain't such a knucklehead anymore, huh?

Steiner: Silence! This is no place for thieves! You must leave, now.

Baku: So that's how it is, huh? Do I gotta remind you that one of my boys saved your kingdom? But I bet you ain't got no ears for listenin' to a lowlife like me.

Steiner: Are you talking about Zidane? Yes, he did protect the princess and her kingdom... But that doesn't change the fact that you are all thieves! I cannot let your kind roam about the castle!

Baku: No appreciation whatsoever, eh? Well, I don't got any reason to stay here, anyway. Hey, you know where Zidane might be?

Steiner: He hasn't visited the castle since we returned. Maybe he can teach you a thing or two about proper manners!

Baku: Okay, I get your point! (accidentally dropped letter without notice) I've had enough of yer self-righteousness!

The boat appeared.

Baku: Gwahahaha! Perfect timing! (to the soldier) Take me into town!

Steiner got pissed off and left. Beatrix appeared.

Beatrix: Ah, so it was Steiner... I thought I heard him yelling. Sigh... Alexandria is at peace again...yet my heart is full of sorrow. Why...? Hmm...? (saw a letter) Steiner must've dropped this. Let's see...

The letter reads as follows:

When the night sky wears the moon as its pendant, I shall await you at the dock.

Beatrix: Wh-What is this letter!? Did Steiner... ..write me a love letter? Steiner...

Later in the bar with Zidane still moping...

Zidane: Dagger... Are you all cozy on your throne already!? No! No, no, no! I can't start my day without Dagger! Her smile! Her voice! Her voice is like a beautiful song... And her song makes me soar high into the sky! But now...

Ruby: You can still fly high, darlin'!

The Tantalus group came in the bar.

Ruby: Zidane, you can do it!

Cinna: She's right!

Blank: Why are you still moping? This isn't like you at all!

Marcus: Yeah!

Zidane: Stop it! You don't understand how I feel!

Zidane walks away. Then he bumped into Baku, who was coming in.

Zidane: Whoa!

Baku: Long time no see, Zidane! What happened? You look pathetic.

Zidane: Boss! Let me join Tantalus again! We can steal treasure together, just like old times!

Baku: Treasure, eh? There ain't much treasure lyin' around in this world, boy. Besides... A Tantalus always gets what he sets his eyes on! That's our rule number one, remember!? No, you don't. You got no right to join us. You understand what I'm, sayin'? If you can't even capture a canary, you ain't got what it takes to join Tantalus!

Zidane: Boss...

Vivi came in.

Vivi: Hey, Zidane, can we go see Dagger?

Baku: (to Zidane) Gwahahaha! Why can't you be more honest, like this little guy?

Baku's crew left the scene.

Vivi: Can we? Can we? Please?

Zidane: Alright. Let's cheer her on before she becomes a queen!

Vivi: Yeah!

Zidane and Vivi proceeds to the dock.

Freya: That Zidane... Doesn't even stop by to say hello!

Amarant appeared.

Freya: What are you staring at?

Amarant: ...Are you really that tough?

Freya: Try me!

Amarant: I don't go looking for trouble, but I'll fight back if trouble finds me. Why don't you apologize, and maybe I'll forgive you.

Freya: Ha!

Alexandrian Soldier 1: !

Alexandrian Soldier 2: !

Alexandrian Soldier 1: Stop right now, or I will charge both of you with disorderly conduct!

Zidane: Hey! What's going on here?

Freya: Zidane! I'd love to stop and talk, but I'm busy right now.

Amarant: Is she...a friend or yours? Then tell her who I am. Tell her I'm the Flaming Amarant.

Zidane: Sorry, Amarant. She's just a little worked up about something.

(to soldier 2) Sorry, babe. They're my friends. (to soldier 1) Will you let them go for my sake?

Alexandrian Soldier 1: S-Sure... Princess Garnet asked us to give special treatment to you, Master Vivi, and Miss Freya.

Zidane: (Dagger...) I-I see. Thanks! (to Freya) Hey, Freya... Stop being so mad, alright?

Freya: Do you know why I'm really mad? It's because of you! Where have you been!? Dagger is about to become queen, and you're off wandering about! Have you found out anything more about Kuja!? Well? Answer me!

Zidane: Um... Well, I tried to find more info, but...

Freya: Look, if Kuja was responsible for taking Dagger's eidolons... ...and killing Brahne, who was working with him... Don't you think he'd come after Dagger again!?

Zidane: I know... But what can I do? I couldn't even talk to her, remember? I don't even know if I can protect her... Besides, she's gonna be queen. She'll have all the guards she'll need. She won't need me.

Vivi: But Zidane... I think Dagger wants to see you. So... Let's go see her!

Zidane: Yeah... But we'll leave as soon as we're done.

Amarant: Zidane... You're not gettin' away from me. You still owe me a rematch.

Zidane: Suit yourself.

Zidane's group rides the boat to Alexandria Castle. There...

Eiko: (grabbed by Steiner) Aaahhh! Leggo!!!

Steiner threw Eiko out of the castle.

Eiko: Ouch! This is no way to treat a lady!!

Steiner: Quit screaming, or I'll throw you into the dungeon!

Eiko: GAAAHHH!

Zidane: What happened, Eiko?

Eiko: Zidane! Oh, it was horrible! He called me a liar and a loudmouth and a brat!!!

Amarant: ...He's right.

Eiko: What did you just say!? Do you want to repeat that!?

Amarant: Man, I hate kids...

Freya: Calm down a little. What is your name?

Eiko: Me? I'm Eiko! Eiko Carol of Madain Sari!

Freya: From Madain Sari? Why, I've never heard of it.

Eiko: Don't you know anything? Madain Sari is a-

Steiner: Silence! What are you all doing here!? This is the royal castle! You do not belong here!

Vivi: Hello, Mister Steiner.

Steiner: Master Vivi! A pleasure to see you again.

Vivi: We came here to see Dagger.

Steiner: The princess? Hmm... If that is Master Vivi's wish, I shall arrange a meeting.

Inside the castle...

Steiner: You all wait right there! Princess, we are ready.

Dagger came out.

Dagger: Thank you for coming, everyone.

Eiko: She looks beautiful...

Vivi: Wow... You look beautiful!

Freya: Splendid! (to Zidane) Zidane? Have you nothing to say?

Zidane: ...No.

Steiner: Princess, we must go now.

Dagger: (Zidane...) ...Alright.

Eiko: Dagger, wait!

Eiko climbed the stairs to Dagger.

Eiko: Dagger! Is this the last time we're gonna see each other?

Dagger: Oh, no. Of course not. I won't be able to wander around the world with you anymore... ...but I'll never forget our journey together.

Eiko: Dagger... I wanted us to remain good rivals forever.

Dagger: Rivals? Eiko, you say funny things sometimes. Oh, there are some things I wanted to give you. Let's trade the jewels as a symbol of our friendship. Two of my jewels...

Eiko: Two of my jewels...

Dagger: Goodbye, Eiko.

Dagger, Steiner, and Beatrix went back into Dagger's room.

Vivi: Why didn't you say anything to her, Zidane?

Zidane: I don't know... I tried...

Freya: And?

Zidane: I couldn't say anything! I had a whole speech ready for her. But it would've been a lie! How could I lie to her!? 'Good luck, Dagger! I'll be watching you from afar.' 'Come find me if you need someone to talk to.' It's a big fat lie! That's not how I feel at all! That's not how I feel...at all.

During the night, Eiko is outside looking at the water.

Eiko: So, there's only room for Dagger in Zidane's heart... I wish I hadn't written that stupid letter. Zidane looked so sad... Isn't there anything I can do for him? Aaahhhhhh! Zidane!!! I hate you!!! You insensitive fool!!! You don't even know how I feel... I feel bad about ditching him, but I really don't feel like seeing him tonight. I gotta hide before he shows up! (saw someone) Shoot! Someone's coming! Could it be Zidane!?

Blank and Marcus appeared while Eiko takes her hiding spot.

Marcus: There's no one here, Bro.

Blank: I guess I'm early...

Marcus: ...Maybe. I wonder who wrote you that love letter?

Blank: Well... Just read the letter. I bet she's beautiful!

Marcus: Really? Are you sure you didn't write it yourself? I mean, you caught the letter falling from the floor above you, right?

Blank: I'm telling you, she was too shy to hand me the letter herself! And if you don't think I'm a ladies' man, you're wrong. Chicks are intimidated by good-looking guys. That's why...

Marcus: Someone's coming!

Blank: Marcus! Don't interrupt me while I'm talking!

Marcus: Let's hide, Bro!

Blank: Alright, alright.

Blank dropped the letter without notice. Marcus and Blank take their hiding place. Steiner appeared.

Steiner: I must tighten up security around the castle from now on! Dusk to dawn, rain or shine, I must patrol the castle! Right, clear! Left, clear! Huh? It's a piece of paper... This looks like a letter. Let's see...

Steiner read the letter.

Steiner: M-M-My goodness! Th-This is a love letter! Who wrote it to whom!? Hmm... No address or addressee... Did someone drop it here, knowing that I would pass by? Who could it have been...?

Beatrix appeared.

Beatrix: Steiner...

Steiner: Beatrix... Was it you...?

Eiko: <Thump thump...> (A-Are they in love?)

Marcus: (B-Bro...)

Blank: (Shh! Quiet!)

Beatrix: Steiner...

Steiner: Beatrix...

Eiko: (Ooo! What's gonna happen?)

Marcus: (M-My nose is bleeding...)

Blank: (Then stick your thumb up it!)

Before Steiner and Beatrix were about to kiss...

Baku: AAA-CHOO! AAA-CHOO!

Blank: Boss!?

Eiko: Oh, you totally ruined the scene!

Eiko left. The next morning, in the bar...

Freya: That Zidane... Where did he go?

Amarant: Who knows...

Vivi: I'll go look for him...

Vivi ran into Eiko.

Eiko: Ahh! Hey, watch it! I'm NOT in a good mood right now! Stay out of my way!

Tot then came in.

Tot: Excuse me. Have you seen a young lady named Eiko?

Eiko: Oh! It's the nerdy guy!

Tot: Ha ha ha... You're as energetic as ever.

Eiko: Yup! I'm always energetic! (But I'm actually hurting on the inside from being rejected by Zidane...)

Tot: Did you say something?

Eiko: No, I didn't! Didn't you come here to talk to me about something?

Tot: Oh, yes. I almost forgot... Your village... What was the name...?

Eiko: Madain Sari.

Tot: Yes, I wanted to ask you a few questions about Madain Sari.

Eiko: Sure, I'll tell you everything I know. You helped me out. But why don't we go to your place? We can relax there.

Tot: To my home? My home is located in Treno. It's a bit far from here...

Eiko: Treno? Sounds like a cool place! I'm really interested in sightseeing! I wanna go there.

Zidane: I'm coming with you!

Zidane came in.

Zidane: There's a card game tournament going on in Treno right now. I wanna participate.

Vivi: A card game tournament? That sounds fun. I wanna go, too...

Freya: I'd like to go, as well.

Amarant: Treno, huh...?

Tot: Ha ha ha... Quite a party this is becoming. It would be my pleasure. We shall go to Treno.

Later in Gargan Roo...

Zidane: There's still Mist here...

Eiko: Kinda looks like the Iifa Tree before we got rid of the Mist.

Vivi: I don't think the Mist is as dense as it was before.

Tot: Yes, I heard that you all stopped the Mist... The Mist permeated through the roots. That is probably why it still lingers here.

Freya: ...This is a gargant?

Tot: Yes. Shall we?

Zidane's group rides the gargant to Treno. After arriving there...

Amarant: I never knew about this secret passage...

Tot: I apologize for the lack of space.

Amarant: It's fine...

Zidane: Hey, Amarant, have you been here before?

Amarant: ...What about you?

Zidane: Me? I've been to every place where there are beautiful women!

Amarant:

Eiko: Can we talk about Madain Sari later? I wanna go sightseeing.

Tot: Oh, of course. There's no hurry.

Eiko: (to Vivi) What are you staring at? Let's go!

Vivi: Wh-Who? Me?

Eiko: Yes, you! This is my first time in Treno. Show me around.

Freya: Then I shall go, as well. I'll take this chance to relax.

Zidane: What about you, Amaranant?

Amarant:

Zidane: ...I don't understand him.

Tot: You know, today is the last day for the card game tournament registration.

Zidane: Well, then I better go register.

Tot: I'm a skilled card player. Please let me know if you need assistance.

Zidane: Hey, I'm not so out of practice that I'd need your help.

Tot: I see. Good luck.

Zidane makes his way to the card tournament area.

Card Seller: Registration for the card tournament is still open. You must win two games before you can challenge the champion. Fantastic prizes await the contestant who defeats the champion.

Zidane: What's the champion like?

Card Seller: Lo and behold...!

Zidane: Isn't he that amazing?

Card Seller: Oh, yes, very much so...

Zidane: Just tell me what he's like!

Card Seller: Well... <Whisper whisper...>

Zidane: Wh-What!? She's a cutie in a sailor's uniform!? Wow, I'd love to challenge her!

Card Seller: See? Now, go ahead and register!

Zidane: Sure, I'll register. Anything to meet this girl!

Card Seller: You're registered now. Please enter through the gate. The game will begin automatically.

Zidane begins the card game. After winning the first round, he goes again for the second round. After winning the second round, he enters for the one chance against the champion in the final round. Then, the champion arrived.

Erin: This way, Regent!

Regent Cid: Yes, I know... But remember my condition...

Erin: Please, Regent! You must behave like a champion! Let's register!

Boy: It's the champion!

Father: Yeah, here she comes...

Erin: (to the card seller) I'm the champion, Erin! I'd like to enter the tournament, please!

Card Seller: Ah, we've been waiting for you! Please go inside.

Erin: Thanks. Hey...

Boy: Ewww, Dad, it's an oglop!

Father: Shoo! Shoo! Go away, you filthy oglop!

Regent Cid:

Erin: Um... I'm sorry but this oglop is my...

Boy: It's the champion's pet?

Father: I-I'm sorry!

Erin: It's okay...

Regent Cid: Since when am I your pet!? <Gwok!>

Erin: Well, you ARE an oglop right now, after all...

Regent Cid: Silence! <Gwok!> I'm the champion! <Gwok-gwok...> No one understands...

Erin and Regent Cid went inside.

Father: I heard the champion is a master of winning games with oglop cards... Her name is... 'Erin the Oglop Master'...

The final round begins. After Zidane wins the game...

Card Game Usher: Congratulations, you're the winner!

Zidane: So the champion was an airship pilot from Lindblum...

Erin: I'm Erin, the airship pilot! Nice to meet you.

Regent Cid: Don't be ridiculous! I'm the champion!

Zidane: Hey, Regent Cid. Still an oglop, I see.

Regent Cid: And you still haven't learned any manners...

Zidane: Cut me some slack, will ya? What are you doing here, anyway?

Regent Cid: Mainly participating in the tournament but there was something I wanted to test.

Zidane: What are you testing?

Erin: Our new airship, Hilda Garde 2!

Zidane: The one that can fly without Mist?

Regent Cid: Correct. We can't go very fast yet, but we made it to Treno.

Zidane: Why now?

Regent Cid: I have a funny feeling there'll be more trouble on the horizon.

Zidane: Don't you worry. I'm sure our almighty Queen Garnet will take care of everything.

Suddenly...

Eiko: Oh no! This is horrible!!!

Zidane: What's up, Eiko?

Eiko: Oh, it's horrible! A moogles from Treno just told me-

Regent Cid: What's wrong? <Gwok!>

Eiko: It's Alexandria! Something horrible is happening!

Later in Alexandria...

Kuja: Peace is but a shadow of death, desperate to forget its painful past... Though we hope for promising years. After shedding a thousand tears, yesterday's sorrow constantly nears. And while the moon still shines blue, by dawn, it will turn to scarlet hue. What an auspicious day for Alexandria. Garnet's ascension to the throne has brought hope and peace to this kingdom. The people are overjoyed; they believe a wonderful future is ahead of them. ...But the celebration isn't over yet. It's time to really light things up! Your former master is here, Bahamut. Play a requiem for her and all of Alexandria!

We watch a movie of Bahamut being summoned and it started to attack Alexandria. Dagger saw the attack, too. In the queen's throne...

Beatrix: Your Highness!

Dagger: That's Bahamut, isn't it...? Beatrix, please gather our soldiers.

Beatrix: Yes, Your Highness! Our soldiers have already assembled and await your orders.

In the inner area of the castle...

Steiner: HURRY UP, YOU FOOLS! This is an emergency! Get your act together before the princess arrives! Line up!!!

Dagger and Beatrix came in.

Beatrix: Your Highness, as you can see, we are ready to act at any

time. Please give your orders.

Dagger gave the orders to the soldiers.

Beatrix: You were splendid, Your Highness.

Dagger received Angel Earrings.

Steiner: Beatrix, let's go!

Steiner and Beatrix left.

Dagger: ...Everyone's gone. I don't know what to do... Mother... I need your help.

Suddenly, Dagger collapsed. Outside with Steiner and Beatrix...

Steiner: This is it, Beatrix.

Beatrix: I will give my all for Alexandria!

Steiner: Well said! Let us march on to victory!

Steiner and Beatrix fights Mistodons. After defeating lots of them, we are now with Dagger.

Dagger: ...? I hear music... Where is it coming from...? Is it coming from upstairs...?

Dagger proceeds to the top floor. We watch a movie of the castle extending stairs to the roof. Dagger goes all the way up.

Dagger: What is this place...? I can still hear the music. Where is it coming from...? ...What am I doing here...? Mother... Zidane... No... I can't depend on them anymore! As the queen of Alexandria, I must protect my kingdom.

The screen switches to Zidane's group in the airship Hilda Garde 2.

Freya: The ship is rocking pretty bad.

Regent Cid: It can't be helped. I designed this ship as an oglop, after all. So, I have no <gwok> idea what could happen.

Zidane: Sounds like it might crash any minute.

Regent Cid: Perhaps... But I think we can at least make it to Alexandria.

Zidane: Oh, man... I guess we'd better cross our fingers.

Vivi: Zidane... ...I'm starting to feel sick...

Amarant: It's probably coming from the flight. Go inside and get some rest. Try to stay in the middle of the ship. You'll feel less movement.

Regent Cid: Go on, Vivi.

Vivi: Okay... Thanks... (to Eiko) Eiko?

Eiko: What?

Vivi: I saw something sparkle.

Eiko: Huh?

There was a shaking.

Eiko: Dagger...?

Zidane: Dagger!? Eiko, what's going on?

Eiko: I thought I just heard Dagger's voice.

There was another shaking.

Zidane: What? Geez, something's wrong with this ship...

Eiko: This light... Maybe it's the holy judgment!

Zidane: Holy judgment?

Eiko runs to the end of the airship.

Zidane: Hey, what are you doing!?

Eiko: The summoner is being called... Alexander's judgment has come!

We watch a movie of Eiko falling into Alexandria castle where Dagger and Eiko's pendant are reacting to each other.

Dagger: Eiko! How-why are you here!?

Eiko: I heard your voice on the airship.

Dagger: No wonder... I felt your presence, too, and all of a sudden, I was covered in light. (the pendant is reacting) It's happening again!

Eiko: Dagger, this is the light of destiny.

Dagger: The light of destiny?

Eiko: A summoner's light of destiny, brought on by the hidden powers of the 4 jewels. This light appears when a holy eidolon calls for its summoner. Come on, Dagger! As summoners, we have to fulfill our destiny!

Dagger: But... I don't know what to do.

Eiko: It's okay. I'll show you. First, we have to put our hands together.

Dagger: Like this?

Eiko: Uh-huh. Now, pray in your heart.

Dagger and Eiko: O holy guardian, hear our prayers. Darkness overshadows us once again. O holy guardian, hear our prayers. Deliver us out of darkness into light.

We watch a movie of Alexander summoned. Then Alexander attacked Bahamut

and killed it. After that...

Kuja: It's so beautiful... Alexander...the legendary eidolon... So, you wish to defend the castle with your brilliant wings...? How admirable... Your powers even transcend Bahamut's... Alexander, I've been waiting for you. I've called a magic carriage for you. I'm sure you'll like it. Invincible, come forth! You're mine, Alexander!

We watch a movie of the eye scope (which is really called Invincible) about to capture. In the Invincible...

Old Man: You have gone too far, Kuja. I granted you the freedom to do as you wish in Gaia for one purpose alone. Now that you have lost sight of your mission, I will no longer tolerate your actions. You have not the slightest idea whom you are defying. I will show you soon enough. You too, Zidane...

The screen switches to Kuja.

Kuja: !!!? What happened to the Invincible!? Enslave Alexander, as you have enslaved Bahamut! !!! Could it be...Garland!? Impossible! Why would he come to Gaia!? If it is indeed Garland, he must know my plan! But why has he assumed control of the Invincible...? !!!? No! He can't be...

Later in Alexandria Castle...

Regent Cid: Phew... That was quite a trip...

Amarant: You little bug. We could've been killed.

Freya: Amarant's right. It was a mistake to come here on that airship.

Regent Cid: Well, we had to get here somehow.

Zidane: Come on, guys. We made it here in one piece. That's all that matters.

Regent Cid: <Gwok-gwok!> That's right!

Vivi: I'm never gonna ride on an airship again... Never ever...

Regent Cid: Sorry, Vivi.

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Captain!!!

The knight ran past Zidane.

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Where is Her Highness!?

Zidane: I don't know. We're looking for her, too.

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Shoot! I must find the captain!

Zidane: Alright, let's go find Dagger.

Vivi: We have to find Eiko, too.

Zidane: They're probably together.

Zidane's group proceeds to the top floor. Out there...

Vivi: Gee... What is this?

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> So, this is the secret of Alexandria Castle...

Freya: Are Dagger and Eiko up there?

Regent Cid: Maybe. Let's go see. (to Zidane about to run up the stairs)
<GWOK!> What are you doing!?

Zidane: There's no point in all of us going. I'll take it from here.

Vivi: Wh-Why? I wanna go with you. I wanna help Dagger and Eiko, too.

Zidane: Kuja might destroy this castle at any minute. Get out of here while you can. Go on, Vivi. Don't worry about me. Someday, you'll probably do the same thing for someone's who's really important to you. Dagger is more important to me than anything else.

Amarant: Man, you make sick. I'm outta here. Next time you wanna play hero, don't even bother calling me. Later...

Amarant left.

Freya: I guess there's no way to stop you. But remember, this is not just your war, so don't even think about fighting Kuja now. As soon as you find Dagger, leave.

Zidane: Alright.

Freya: Come on, Vivi. Let's go.

Freya left.

Vivi: Freya. Wait.

Regent Cid: Let him go, Vivi. He'll be alright.

Regent Cid left.

Zidane: Sorry I can't take you with me. But I have to go with my instincts on this one. I don't know what else to say...

Vivi: Okay, Zidane... Good luck.

Vivi left. Zidane proceeds to the top area where Dagger is. Suddenly, the area is shaking.

Zidane: What the heck was that!? GEEZ!

We watch the movie of Invincible, capturing Alexander and something was wrong with Dagger. The building is collapsing, but Zidane grabbed Dagger and both them and Eiko made it to safety.

Zidane: Dagger... I'm sorry... I don't know why I wasn't honest with you...

Eiko: Zidane... We really made a big mess, didn't we?

Zidane: We'll talk later! Let's get out of here!

Zidane's group evacuates. We watch a movie of Invincible destroying Alexander with the optic laser. Alexander's demise caused a chain reaction of destroying Alexandria and the castle. The screen switches to the old man in the Invincible.

Old Man: More souls have returned... In microscopic proportions, the process still continues after thousands of years. Eventually, these circulating souls will no longer belong to Gaia. They must never be circulated back... Kuja did well. If only he had last longer... I never imagined he would choose to end his remaining days on Gaia... Perhaps, this was his fate, set in ages past. I, too, cannot escape my fate; someday, I must face your counterpart...

The screen switches to Lindblum.

Minister Artania: As you can see, the reconstruction is moving right along.

Regent Cid: Good. We've started building airship No. 3. It's going well, too <gwok>. Many engineers from the Industrial District have volunteered. Out people are so strong. I never realized until now...

Minister Artania: They have faith in you, Regent. That is why they can be strong. They are proud to be citizens of Lindblum.

Regent Cid:

Baku: AAH...ACHOOO!!!

Baku and Blank appeared.

Regent Cid: Baku?

Baku: Hey, Regent. What's goin' on?

Regent Cid: I'm tired from working day and night on a new airship... Hey, why don't you come by the research center and give us a hand sometime?

Baku:

Blank:

Baku: You talkin' to both of us?

Regent Cid: Heh, heh, heh. I'm just kidding. We already have enough people <gwok> working on it.

Baku: Oh... Do you know how Zidane's doing?

Regent Cid: He's fine. In fact, he's probably awake now.

Baku: Blank, go to the castle and see how he's doing.

Regent Cid: Oh, and tell him to come to my room.

Blank left. The screen switches to Zidane on a bed in Lindblum Castle.

Zidane: Dagger... Eiko... ...How did I get here?

Blank arrived.

Blank: Zidane.

Zidane: !?

Blank: So, how are you feelin'?

Zidane: Okay, I guess... By the way... So what happened after that? How did I get here?

Blank: Slow down. Geez... Things were so chaotic; it took forever to find you guys. No one really got hurt except you. I heard you pulled some crazy stunt.

Zidane: Yea... Eiko and Dagger were in trouble, so...

Blank: Always showing off. You got hurt pretty bad because of that. After we found you guys, we stole a ship by the port and escaped.

Zidane: Wow. I don't remember any of that.

Blank: I didn't think so. You know, you slept three days straight...

Zidane: Really!?

Blank: By the way, Cid said he wanted to talk to you in the royal chamber.

Zidane: Oh. Okay. I wonder what he wants...

Before Zidane proceeds to the royal chamber, he talks to Dagger at the telescope.

Zidane: Well, look who's here. Man, we went through some crazy stuff, huh? I honestly didn't think I was gonna make it this time. But as you can see, I'm alright now.

Dagger:

Zidane: Dagger... Is something wrong?

Dagger:

Zidane: Ohhh, okay. You're so happy to see me, you don't know what to say. I didn't know you loved me so much. (Did I do something wrong...?) Alright, what did I do wrong?

Dagger:

Zidane: (...Maybe she's just tired. A lot has happened since Brahne's death...) (...I'd better cheer her up.) Hey, remember that promise we made before the festival? You still owe me a date. Come on. Let's go.

Dagger:

Zidane: (...I think she's starting to get annoyed.) (Maybe I should leave her alone.) I guess you have a lot on your mind right now. Sorry to bother you. I'll see you later.

Zidane left.

Dagger: (not talking) (Zidane... You're so sweet.) (Thank you.)

Zidane proceeds to where his groups are.

Eiko: Zidane!

Zidane: Heh, heh. Did you all miss me?

Freya: How are you feeling?

Zidane: Okay, I guess.

Steiner: Zidane, Regent Cid wishes to see you. Go to the royal chamber.

Zidane: Oh. Okay. See you all later.

Zidane proceeds to the royal chamber. In there.

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> At last, the hero has awakened.

Zidane: I heard you wanted to see me. What's up?

Regent Cid: After reviewing the attack on Alexandria, we've discovered some interesting facts... ..facts, I think, you all should know <gwok>.

Minister Artania: The others are waiting in the conference room. (to Regent Cid) We can begin the meeting at any time.

Regent Cid: Alright, let's begin.

Minister Artania: (to Zidane) Please follow me.

Regent Cid's seat goes down like an elevator to the conference room. In there...

Regent Cid: Is that everyone?

Steiner: We are still missing the princess.

Eiko: I'll go get her.

Zidane: Wait!

Eiko left to find Dagger.

Zidane: ...Oh well.

Regent Cid: Let's begin. Where should I start...? <Gwok> ...I can imagine.

Minister Artania: Highness is probably beyond despair.

Steiner: I have never witnessed such tragedy. There was nothing we can do. We fought with everything we had, but to no avail. Beatrix and I were prepared to give our lives. ...I don't know what happened to her.

Minister Artania: We have spent much time and effort rebuilding Lindblum. But I believe it will take much longer for our people to overcome their losses. Those who survived have a long, tough road ahead of them.

Freya: Burmecia, Cleyra, Lindblum and now Alexandria... Kuja has vanquished all four nations. What is he trying to accomplish?

Zidane: Who knows!? Let's go get him!

Amarant: It's not that easy. Kuja's powers are beyond ours. How do you plan to fight him?

Zidane:

Regent Cid: Kuja is a man of many mysteries, indeed. I still can't believe what I saw when we were evacuating from Alexandria.

Zidane: What!? What did you see?

Regent Cid: I saw him escape on my stolen airship, Hilda Garde 1 <gwok>. There were black mages onboard, too. They weren't any old black mages! They were talking normally!

Vivi: NO!

Zidane: No way... Are you sure about this!?

Regent Cid: There's no doubt.

Vivi: WHY!? Why are they with Kuja...?

Regent Cid told Zidane everything.

Zidane: ...So basically, your wife got mad at you and used magic to turn you into an oglop.

Regent Cid: Sad story, isn't it? My lecherous character has led to my undoing.

Steiner: But how did Kuja get a hold of Lady Hilda's airship?

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> That's what I'd like to know. He probably commandeered it to further his mad schemes, whatever they may be. In any case, I must get Hilda and her airship back somehow <gwok>!

Freya: What a shame, for a ruler to end up like this... But we can't ignore this situation. Kuja must be stopped!

Steiner: Indeed! We must deal with him before it's too late!

Zidane: It's easier said than done. We don't know where he is. We don't even have an airship to look for him.

Regent Cid: He's right. No. 2 is still <gwok> out of commission. And I doubt I can oversee the construction of a new airship in my current form. If only I were <gwok> a man again... Artania, is there anything that can be done?

Minister Artania: I have spoken to Doctor Tot regarding this matter and asked him to join us. He should be here any minute.

Steiner: That's wonderful! I'm certain Doctor Tot will be most helpful!

Tot: I'm sorry I'm late.

Tot arrived.

Minister Artania: Please forgive me for calling you on such short notice, Doctor. Thank you very much for giving up your precious time to come here.

Tot: Please, Minister. You need not be so formal. I heard what happened in Alexandria. I am so relieved to see you all again. Hmm? Where is the princess? Eiko is missing, too. !!!? Are they alright!?

Zidane: Don't worry, Doc. They're alright. Eiko's out looking for Dagger right now.

Tot: Oh, I see. Well, that's a relief.

Regent Cid: So, Doctor Tot, I was wondering-

Eiko: HEY GUYS!

Eiko suddenly ran in.

Zidane: Geez, what's up?

Tot: Ho-ho-ho. I see you are as energetic as ever.

Eiko: It's Dagger. She's...

Zidane: What!? What's wrong!?

Eiko: ...I think she's lost her voice. She can't talk anymore.

Zidane: What!?

Steiner: WHAT!!!?

Vivi: !!!

Tot: !!!!?

Eiko: Just come with me! She's in the guest room.

Zidane: Wait! Hold on! I'll be back in a minute! Come on, Doc!

Steiner: I'm coming, too!

Regent Cid: Let's postpone this meeting.

Minister Artania: I agree, sire... (to everyone) We will resume this meeting later.

Regent Cid: Zidane, report back to me after you find out more about her condition.

Zidane's group proceeds to the guest's room. In there...

Tot: Please wait! <Huff-Huff-Heave-Heave.>

Eiko: She's sitting on her bed.

Zidane's group approaches closer.

Zidane: ...Dagger?

Dagger:

Tot: Princess?

Dagger:

Steiner: Princess, what is the matter...?

Dagger:

Zidane: This is a bad joke. (to Tot) Doctor, isn't there anything you can do?

Tot: What tragedy... The princess has indeed lost her voice. After all that she has gone through—the death of her mother, the destruction of her beloved kingdom... She has suffered so much pain.

Steiner: (sad) P-Princess...

Steiner kneels to the ground.

Eiko: Dagger...

Zidane: So that's it!? There's no hope!?

Tot: ...I believe this is only temporary. But it may be months, even years, before she can speak again... ...until she can overcome her grief.

Zidane: So, all we can do is wait.

Tot: I'm afraid so... This is no ordinary illness. We must keep her heart at peace. That is all I can think of.

Zidane:

Steiner: Princess, please forgive me!!!

Zidane: ...Eiko, can you look after her for a while?

Eiko: ...Sire. What are you gonna do?

Zidane: Find Kuja and beat the crap out of him! (to Tot) Doc, I need an airship to find Kuja. Tell me how to turn Cid back into a human! That's the only way!

Tot: Now, now. Calm down... Let's go see the regent.

Zidane: (to the saddened Steiner) Come on, Rusty. Get up.

Steiner: Princess, <sniffle-sniffle!> Please... Say something! <sniffle-sniffle!>

Zidane: (to Eiko: You're gonna have to baby-sit him, too...

Later in the royal chamber...

Tot:

Regent Cid: So... <gwok> is there any hope for me?

Tot: I'm sorry, sire. We must find the person who cast the spell to reverse the effect.

Zidane: Dammit...

Tot: ...Actually, there may be another way. Long ago, I read a book on metamorphosis that discussed methods to reverse the effect.

Regent Cid: Is this true!?

Tot: Yes. However, I don't know if it is a reliable source. The book had a rather comical tone.

Regent Cid: Is there a chance that I could die from it?

Tot: I doubt it will be lethal, sire. We will simply mix three ingredients and apply the formula to your body.

Zidane: Let's just try it.

Regent Cid: <Gwok!> That's easy for you to say.

Zidane: What are the three ingredients?

Tot: Unusual Potion, Beautiful Potion, and Strange Potion. They must be mixed in a 5:2:3 ratio.

Minister Artania: Oh... Magicians of early times often used those potions. They were all fairly common in the old times.

Tot: Yes. I expected the ingredients to such a powerful cure to be more exotic, too. But as you mentioned, they are no longer popular, so I do not know if we can find them.

Zidane: ...I think Cinna has the Unusual Potion. I'll take care of this. I'm gonna go downtown and look for the ingredients.

Regent Cid: I'm counting on you <gwok>.

Zidane searches for the three potions. After finding them all in the town...

Zidane: (That's all of 'em. Finally, I can go back to the castle and see Cid.)

Zidane went back to Lindblum Castle. In the royal chamber...

Zidane: Hey, I got 'em! I mixed the 3 potions in this bottle, like you told me to.

Tot: Excellent. Let's test it right away. (to Regent Cid) Sire, are you ready?

Regent Cid: ...Oh, what the hell. Go ahead.

Zidane: This better work.

Tot: Alright. Here we go.

Tot fed the potion to Regent Cid.

Zidane: Whoa!

Regent Cid turned into a frog.

Regent Cid: Did it work!? ...Hmmm? Something's wrong <ribbit>.

Zidane: Ribbit?

Tot: It didn't work.

Minister Artania: Good gracious! The regent has become a frog!

Zidane: Oh, man... Now we'll never get a new airship.

Regent Cid: That's it <ribbit>! No more potions, no more medicine!
We're gonna go find Hilda! Gather everyone in the conference room!
<Ribbit!>

Zidane: Geez. This sucks...

Later in the conference room...

Minister Artania: Thank you for coming. The regent has an important
announcement.

Steiner: !!!? Now he's a frog!

Regent Cid: I wanted to <ribbit> become a man again, but this is all I
got. We all know that Kuja holds the key to our fate <ribbit>. We must
find him at any cost!

Steiner: But we don't have an airship.

Regent Cid: We can use that <ribbit> ship we stole in Alexandria.
Artania, order Zebolt to service that ship immediately.

Minister Artania: Yes, sire.

Zidane: So, where exactly are we going?

Regent Cid: <Ribbit>... I'm still working on that.

Vivi: ...Um, you said earlier that there were black mages on Kuja's
airship. So, if we go to the Black Mage Village, maybe we can learn
something.

Regent Cid: Hmmm...

Vivi: ...I still can't believe it. Why were they on Kuja's ship!? WHY!?

Zidane: Well, I'm with Vivi. I think we should go to the Black Mage
Village.

Steiner: Yes. Brilliant idea, Master Vivi. (to Dagger) Princess... will

you be going as well?

Dagger:

Eiko: Of course she will!

Zidane: I don't know if that's a good idea.

Dagger:

Eiko: Don't worry. I'll take care of her.

Regent Cid: Alright then! <Ribbit!> Let's go to the Black Mage Village!
We'll all meet onboard the ship at the harbor in the Base Level.

Zidane's group proceeds to the Base Level. In there, they get on the Blue Narciss.

Zidane: Man... I hope this thing can get us there.

Quina: Finally, I find you!

It is Quina.

Zidane: ? Quina! What are you doing here?

Quina: Where you go, Zidane!? I travel everywhere, look all over for you!

Blank: Who's this? Your new girlfriend? Heh-heh-heh.

Quina: I so tired. From Madain Sari, I climb mountains, cross ocean, fight monsters...

Zidane: Wow. You've been through one hell of a trip. So, Blank, you're coming, too?

Blank: Yeah, I was asked to.

Zidane: By whom?

Blank: The boss, of course. But it wasn't his idea.

Regent Cid: It was mine <ribbit>.

Quina: !?

Regent Cid: We need at least one person to look after the ship when we reach our destination.

Blank: Plus, I still owe you guys one, so I volunteered.

Quina: F-Frog...

Zidane: ...You don't owe us anything.

Quina: Is talking...

Regent Cid: Okay, anchors aweigh!

Zidane: Hey, Quina loves frog, so you'd better watch out.

Quina: Maybe I eat it...?

Regent Cid: I'm not worried. I've had more enemies as an oglop.
<Ribbit!> Oh, by the way, if you ever want to change your party members, talk to me.

Blank: Okay, where are we off to?

Zidane: We're going to the Black Mage Village on the Outer Continent.

Blank: Alright.

Zidane chose Steiner, Eiko, and Freya for his group. The ship goes to Black Mage Village. In there...

Vivi: ...Looks like nobody's here.

Zidane: Where did they go?

Vivi: I'm gonna go look around.

Zidane follows Vivi to the cemetery.

Vivi: Where is everyone!?

Black Mage No. 288: They went away with Kuja... Two other guys stayed behind. They're probably at the chocobo shack...

Vivi: Why!? Why did they go with him!?

Black Mage No. 288: They learned about our lifespan... We can live only for a given amount of time. Kuja said he knew how to extend our life spans, so everyone followed him...

Vivi: He's lying! I bet he's lying! Look what he's done to us. He's been using us, treating us like puppets.

Black Mage No. 288: ...Maybe we are just puppets, created to serve humans.

Vivi: !

Zidane: Come on. That's nonsense.

Vivi: ...Where did they go?

Black Mage No. 288: ...I can't tell you that. I can't betray them.

Vivi: Then why didn't you go with them?

Black Mage No. 288:

Vivi: You said the two other guys are in the chocobo shack, right?

Black Mage No. 288:

Zidane: Vivi!

Zidane follows Vivi to the Chocobo Shack.

Vivi: Hello. Is anyone there?

Zidane: Vivi...

Vivi: Please! Open the door!

Zidane: ?

The black mage opened the door.

Black Mage 1: It's born!!!

Vivi: !?

Black Mage 1: Oh!

Vivi: Wait!

Zidane follows Vivi inside.

Black Mage No. 111: Finally...

Black Mage No. 33: Finally...

Black Mage No. 111: Hurray!!!

Black Mage No. 33: Hurray!!!

Black Mage No. 111: I still can't believe it...

Black Mage No. 33: Yeah...

Vivi: I don't understand. Why are you here?

Black Mage No. 33: We're here to look after the chocobo.

Black Mage No. 111: At first, we were gonna go with everyone, but someone had to stay behind to look after the chocobo egg, so we stayed.

Black Mage No. 33: We kept the egg nice and warm by putting a lot of hay over it.

Black Mage No. 111: I can't wait to show him to everyone.

Black Mage No. 33: They're gonna be so happy.

Black Mage No. 111: We have come up with a name.

Black Mage No. 33: Hey... What's happening to me? I feel strange...

Black Mage No. 111: M-Me, too...

Vivi:

Vivi goes outside and Zidane follows him. Out there, Vivi talks to Black Mage No. 288.

Vivi: ...You stayed behind because you were worried about the chocobo

egg.

Black Mage No. 288: ...I don't know. I wanted to follow Kuja because I was so scared of dying. But I couldn't... I felt like I was leaving something important behind.

Vivi: I wanna ask you something.

Black Mage No. 288: What is it?

Vivi: A-Am I gonna stop pretty soon, too?

Zidane: !

Black Mage No. 288: I don't know... Kuja said the prototype built before us would last longer.

Vivi: But...I am gonna stop eventually.

Black Mage No. 288:

Vivi: ...I was really confused when my grandpa died. He told me, 'Vivi, no need be sad.' So I told myself, I can't be sad. That's why I felt confused again when I heard that everyone was stopping around here. I didn't know what to do or what to feel... But when I saw Dagger crying when her mom died, I wasn't confused anymore. I was sad... If I were just a puppet, I never would've felt that way. Mr. 288...we aren't puppets. I know we aren't. ...I hate him. I hate Kuja!!! He's turning everyone into puppets just to kill people!!! If it weren't for him, I know everyone would understand someday. It's not fair...

Zidane: Vivi...

Black Mage No. 288: ...Kuja's secret palace is on the eastern side of this continent.

Zidane: !

Black Mage No. 288: It's buried under quicksand. You'll need a ship to get there.

Vivi: Thanks...

Black Mage No. 288: I hope we can become strong like you someday...

The screen switches to Dagger who is thinking to herself.

Dagger: (Vivi has so much on his mind...) (Unlike me, he's fighting so hard...) (...I thought I would change after I met Zidane.) (...Once I acceded to the throne, I knew I had to change.) (But nothing has changed...! I'm so helpless...)

Eiko: Wow... Dagger, were you listening, too? That crybaby sure has come a long way, don't you think?

Dagger:

Eiko: Dagger? Are you alright? ...Don't worry too much. Vivi has his own way of dealing with things, and you have yours. Come on, cheer up! We'll beat Kuja, and you'll get your voice back in no time.

Dagger:

Eiko: (saw Zidane) Zidane.

Zidane: Is something wrong? Okay. Let's get going.

Vivi: Mr. 288 said Kuja's palace is buried under quicksand, right?

Zidane: Yeah. We're taking the ship to the eastern side of the continent to get there.

Zidane's group proceeds to the quicksand. Then screen went dark.

Voice of Kuja: Huhaha... I knew you'd come. Everything is going according to plan...

Zidane's crews were separated and are in the Desert Palace cells.

Regent Cid: Zidane! <Ribbit>, wake up!

Zidane: U-Ungh... Cid... Where the heck are we?

Regent Cid: Good question <ribbit>! I wish I knew!

Zidane: After I fell into the quicksand, everything went dark... That's all I can remember.

Regent Cid: Me, too <ribbit>! When I woke up, <ribbit> I was in this room.

Zidane: Oh yeah! Where is everyone?

Regent Cid: I don't know <ribbit>. I hope they're alright.

Voice of Kuja: So you're finally awake...

Zidane: That voice... It's Kuja!

Voice of Kuja: I'm so happy to see you again.

Zidane: You rat bastard! Where're my friends?

Voice of Kuja: My, my... Aren't we feisty today? No need to worry about them. They're in rooms not unlike yours. Oh, yes... By the way, I should probably enlighten you as to your current situation.

The ground opened and there's lava at the bottom.

Zidane: Yikes!

Voice of Kuja: I'm sure that even your feeble mind can grasp what would happen if you were to take that plunge. Ahahahahahahaha!

Zidane: Kuja! You're dead!!!

Voice of Kuja: Oh, dear. Was it something I said? Either way, now that you're aware of your predicament, I'd like you to do a tiny little favor for me. I'll let your friends live if you say yes.

Zidane: Dammit... .. Dammit, I don't have a choice!

Voice of Kuja: Very good. You've chosen wisely. First, step outside.

The cell door opened. Zidane and Regent Cid came out.

Zidane: Hey, Cid. I need you to look after the others.

Regent Cid: Fine <ribbit>! I won't let you down! And you <ribbit>! You come back safe!

Zidane: Yeah, I will. See ya.

Zidane approaches the area with two Black Mages.

Zidane: Not these guys again...

Black Mage 1:

Black Mage 2:

Voice of Kuja: Stand between the two black mages.

Zidane was teleported to the area where Kuja is.

Kuja: Welcome to my humble abode.

Zidane: Just cut the chase and tell me what the hell you want!

Kuja: My, we're upset, aren't we? Well, this is your errand... I want you to go somewhere and bring something back for me.

Zidane: So, tell me what it is already, you demon!

Kuja: I'd watch my mouth if I were you. Surely, you haven't forgotten that I hold your friends' lives in my hands.

Zidane: Grr!

Kuja: I'm going to send you to a place called Oeilvert.

Zidane: Where that?

Kuja: Oeilvert is south of the Seaways Canyon on the Forgotten Continent. It isn't really my kind of place.

Zidane: What do you mean by that?

Kuja: You see, there's an anti-magic barrier around the place. And I want to send you because you're too stupid to use magic. Once there, I want you to retrieve the Gulug Stone for me. What do you say? Isn't it a simple task? I'll even send you on my luxury cruise ship, so you won't have to worry about transportation. Perhaps it's too much for you. I'd better send you with three of your friends just to be safe. Besides, nobody likes to fight against himself.

Zidane: ???

Kuja: Heheh, nevermind. Speak their names when you've chosen your partners.

Zidane: I want Freya, Quina, and Amarant.

Kuja: Fine. I shall summon them. Freya... Quina... Amarant... Step through the door. Proceed to the center of the platform.

Freya, Quina, and Amarant were teleported to Kuja's area.

Kuja: Spare me the emotional reunion scene, please. Now, go stand with your friends.

Zidane: You'd better keep your promise, Kuja!

Kuja: Of course. You needn't worry one bit.

Zidane's group got teleported to the airship dock.

Kuja: Khehehe... What a bunch of idiots.

Zidane's group moves on and saw an airship.

Zidane: Whoa! That must be Hilda Garde 1!

Zidane's group hops aboard the airship. The airships takes off and is proceeding to the Forgotten Continent. In the airship...

Zidane: (to Black Mage 1) Hey, can we really trust Kuja?

Black Mage 1:

Zidane: (to Black Mage 2) Hey, can we really trust Kuja?

Black Mage 2:

Zidane: Hey, say something!

Black Mage 2:

Zorn: They will not answer to you.

Thorn: Respond to our orders only, they do.

Zidane: Why, y-you backstabbing bozos!

Zorn: Those are slanderous words!

Thorn: Worst lies, I have ever heard.

Zorn: You needn't concern yourself with such things.

Thorn: Or an end to your friends' lives, we shall bring.

Zidane: Dammit!

Zorn: The black mages were originally designed just to oppress.

Thorn: But a strong sense of self, the Black Waltzes came to possess. Always obey us, these mages do, because a strong ego, they have not.

Zorn: These mass-produced ones are to break once we're through with

their lot.

Thorn: Other purpose than war they have not!

Zorn: They have grown attached to life, yet they'll soon disappear!

Thorn: Hilarious! Nothing but toys are they here!

Zidane: I don't think you guys are any different.

Thorn: What!?

Zorn: Rubbish!

Zidane: You say that the black mages have no souls, but you guys are pawns, just like them! Am I right, or what?

Zorn: You won't be talking so big once we're done with you!

Thorn: Regret those words, you will!

Zidane: Well, let's just take it easy until we arrive. (to Black Mage 2) Drive safe, alright?

The airship arrived at the Forgotten Continent. Zidane's group proceeds to Oeilvert. In there, Zidane's group goes in. After solving many puzzles there, they eventually found the spiraling platform. Down there, Zidane's group saw the Gulug Stone.

Zidane: !!! So this is what Kuja was harping about. Time to head back. Whoa! ...? Something's coming!

Zidane's group fights Ark. After defeating it...

Zidane: We gotta get back to the others!

Zidane's group takes the Gulug Stone. Later in the Desert Palace, the screen switches to Eiko in her cell.

Eiko: Why am I trapped in here!? Hey! Someone lemme out! This is no way to treat a lady! Aww... I hope Zidane and the others are alright... I'm sure they'll come back for me.

Voice of Kuja: So, how do you like the special suites I reserved for each of you? By the way, Zidane is out running an errand for me in return for your safety. But I hate keeping promises... And I so love deceit. So, I thought I would give you a special death to remember me by. My palace is home to a magnificent hourglass. As its sands fall, the floors of your rooms slowly open. Well? Isn't that a fabulous idea? Your lives will be spared if the hourglass is reset. If Zidane comes back in time, that is. Oops, just ten more minutes. Better start praying. Farewell... My sweet, lovable morons. Ahahahahahahaha!

Eiko: What!? Somebody help me!

Voice of Kuja: Farewell... My sweet, lovable morons. Ahahahahahahaha!

Regent Cid: That bastard Kuja! That does it <ribbit>! If I don't save them, no one will!

The screen switches to two Black Mages.

Black Mage No. 69: Say... I reset the hourglass and locked it just because I was ordered to. What we're doing is wrong, isn't it?

Black Mage No. 12: Wait. Isn't that better than to stop functioning?

Black Mage No. 69:

Black Mage No. 12: C-Come on, let's go back.

Black Mage No. 69: Turning off that trap again? I still don't understand how you do it.

Black Mage No. 12: You basically have to turn them all on. You're just thinking too hard. Let's go.

The Black Mages left the scene. Regent Cid goes into the hourglass room with the key hung on a cage with a Hedgehog Pie in it.

Regent Cid: That must be the key they were talking about <ribbit>!

Regent Cid only has 6 minutes to get the key and reverse the hourglass. After Regent Cid got the key...

Regent Cid: Just have to turn this upside-down <ribbit>!

Regent Cid did his job and the hourglass turned upside-down.

Regent Cid: Now, everyone should be alright <ribbit>!

Out in the cell area, the doors opened and Eiko, Steiner, Vivi, and Dagger came out.

Eiko: I thought I was a goner! Thank goodness we made it!

Steiner: I am so happy you are safe, Princess. I was terribly worried!

Dagger:

Regent Cid: Aha! You all made it <ribbit>!

Eiko: !? Huh? You saved us?

Regent Cid: And it wasn't easy, mind you... But we've no time to celebrate <ribbit>! I heard from two black mages <ribbit> that there's some kind of trap up ahead. They said you basically just have to turn them all on, whatever that means <ribbit>. Let's hurry!

Eiko: That's right! We can't just rely on Zidane! (to her group) We have to work together until Zidane gets back! We can do it if we stick together!

Eiko's group solves bunch of puzzles to get to the final teleporter. In that room...

Valia Pira: Intruder alert. Defense system activated. Initializing automatic countermeasures. Transferring from observation to attack mode.

Eiko: Huh? That's not Kuja's voice! Who's there!? Come out and show yourself!

Eiko's group fights Valia Pira. After defeating it, Eiko lights the last candle and the teleport appeared. Eiko rides on the teleporter. Meanwhile...

Zidane: Finally made it back. Well, no rest for the wicked! I gotta get movin'!

Zidane proceeds to the teleporter. In the area with two teleporters...

Zidane: What the... Where are we now? Did I take a wrong turn?

Voice of Kuja: Welcome back... I'm inside the room past the stairs. But I want you to come alone, Zidane. Alone.

Freya: He's the worst scum alive. Zidane, go with caution!

Zidane: Yeah, tell me about it. I'll be okay! You guys just wait here.

Zidane moves on.

Voice of Kuja: Come inside...

Zidane goes inside the area where Kuja awaits.

Kuja: I'm so happy to see you again, Zidane.

Zidane: My friends better be alright!

Kuja: Oh my! Blunt as always, I see... Take a look in there.

Zidane: !!!

Zidane looks at the ground cage with the bodies of Steiner, Vivi, Eiko, and Dagger.

Kuja: No need to worry. They just needed some rest, that's all. Now, give me the Gulug Stone...

Meanwhile with Zidane's crew...

Freya: I worry for Zidane, but I hope the others are well, too! !!!

Suddenly, Eiko's group arrived from the teleporter.

Eiko: Huh? Where's Zidane?

Freya: He went forth to Kuja's domain alone. By what means did you escape?

Regent Cid: Actually...

Eiko: There's no time! We gotta go stop Zidane!

Everybody went inside Kuja's domain. The door closes on Eiko.

Eiko: Aaa!

Eiko is left behind.

Eiko: What the heck!?

Suddenly, Zorn and Thorn captured Eiko. In Kuja's domain...

Kuja: Now, give me the Gulug Stone...

Zidane: You bastard! You're the worst scum alive!

Kuja: <Yawn> I grow weary of your tantrums. Well, will you hand it over or not?

Steiner: Don't relinquish it, Zidane!

Zidane: Huh!? So, who's inside this cage?

Kuja: Oh dear, I wasn't expecting this. That's right, the ones inside are fake! But don't think you've won yet.

Zidane: What do you mean by that?

Kuja: Hehehe...

Voice of Eiko: Aaa! Leave me alone!

Zidane: Eiko!

Voice of Regent Cid: <Rrrrrribbit!> I'll protect you!

Voice of Zorn: What a freak! This frog can speak!

Voice of Thorn: Frog that goes squish, you'll make a fine dish!

Voice of Regent Cid: ...Ungph!... ..<R-Ribbit>...

Zidane: Aw, man... Hey!!

Kuja magically took the Gulug Stone from Zidane.

Kuja: I wanted to finish you off after getting the Gulug Stone and killing all you friends... Instead, I'll just take the girl. I hope we meet again.

Kuja disappeared by taking the teleporter.

Zidane: Arrg! It won't respond.

Quina: He take big airship!

Zidane: Let's get him!

Zidane proceeds to the airship dock.

Zidane: Dammit! He got away!

Regent Cid: We can still follow him on the Blue Narciss!

Zidane: Great minds think alike! Let's go, people!

Zidane's group proceeds to Blue Narciss. The Blue Narciss follows the airship to the Forgotten Continent in the snowy area. In the Blue Narciss...

Blank: He headed towards some weird looking structure.

Freya: Is there something beyond there...?

Zidane: What the hell is Kuja up to...? Why did he take Eiko?

Regent Cid: His motives are unclear <ribbit>... That girl can summon eidolons, too <ribbit>?

Zidane: Yeah. That's it! He's probably after her for the same reason he was after Dagger!

Dagger:

Zidane: Don't worry, Dagger... We're not gonna let him have his way. Kuja's got a lot to answer for.

Zidane chose Steiner, Amarant, and Dagger for his group. Zidane's group proceeds to Esto Gaza. In there, they talk to the bishop.

Bishop: What do you beggars want? You are in a holy place. Keep the noise down. Hmph! Just like the other pointy-hats! No manners at all.

Zidane: Hey, mister, what did you just say? Have you seen some guys that look like my friend here?

Bishop: How dare you address me so! I am the priest of Esto Gaza, the holy place in which you stand. Mind your tongue, child. Are you in league with that brazen crew?

Zidane: Tell me where they went! Was there a little girl with them? My friend's life is in danger! Tell me what you know, now!

Bishop: All life is equal. The living will return to the stars. Through the Path of Souls of the Shimmering Island.

Zidane: What are you talking about? Didn't the black mages have a girl with them?

Dagger: ...

Bishop: I just watched them. Besides, they didn't do anything wrong.

In the bishops memory...

Bishop: They barged in, hundreds of them! So, that was the dreaded black mage army... They headed straight for Mount Gulug without even looking at me.

Zidane: Mount Gulug?

Bishop: An enormous volcano that went extinct in the days of old. Legend has it that a race of great moles once lived within the caverns. But that was very long ago. No mortal has entered those depths ever since the entrance was mysteriously sealed.

We see one of the Black Mage carrying Eiko and Kuja stepped through. The memory ended.

Bishop: They passed through here and went straight to Mount Gulug.

Zidane: And? What about the girl?

Bishop: Oh, yes. One of the black mages carried a little girl, too.

Vivi: That's gotta be Eiko!

Zidane: Well, now we know! We gotta get to Mount Gulug!

Vivi: I'm going, too! I think everyone will understand.

Zidane: Yeah. They can't let Kuja control them forever!

Zidane (besides Vivi) chose Steiner and Dagger for his group. Zidane's group proceeds to Mount Gulug. They arrived at then location where Zorn, Thorn, and Eiko are.

Vivi: Zidane, it's Eiko! Kuja and the black mages are there, too!

Zidane: Eiko! That must be the extraction spell!

The screen switches to Zorn and Thorn attempting to extract the eidolons from Eiko.

Zorn: Eidolon of eternal life!

Thorn: Eidolon of infinite powers!

Zorn: Arise from thy eternal slumber!

Thorn: Depart after thy endless wait!

Zorn: Let there be light!

Thorn: Let there be life!

Zorn: The time has come!

Thorn: The time is now!

The screen switches to Zidane's group.

Dagger: !!! ...

Zidane: W-Wait, Dagger!

Dagger: !!!

Zidane: I know. We know how you feel.

Dagger: ...

Zidane: C'mon, let's do it!

Zidane's group runs to Eiko. The screen switches to Zorn and Thorn.

Zorn: That was odd.

Thorn: Odd, that was.

Zorn: We failed again!

Thorn: Again we have failed!

Zorn: Did you make some mistake?

Thorn: Mistake, I did not! Yours, the mistake must be!

Zorn: I made no mistake at all!

Thorn: The truth, do you speak?

Zorn: Of course, I speak the truth!

Kuja: Will you two just shut up!?

Zorn: I-It's his fault!

Thorn: H-His fault, it is! The one who messed up is you!

Zorn: You're the one who messed up!

Kuja: I said shut up! I don't want to hear excuses! I sense power from within her. Continue the extraction!

Zorn: Continuing further will endanger the subject's life!

Thorn: Only at the age of sixteen can eidolons be extracted!

Kuja: You two just don't get it! I need an eidolon more powerful than Alexander! An eidolon with the power to bury Garland! His powers are so incredible; I cannot even come close. I must destroy him before Terra's plan is activated, or my soul will no longer be my own! Who cares if she lives? I want that eidolon!

Zorn and Thorn were going back to doing their duty, but then, Mog came out.

Mog: Kupo!

Zorn: Where did that come from?

Thorn: You, get out of our way!

Zorn: Master!

Thorn: Master!

Mog: Kupo...!

Kuja: Well!?

Zorn: Her pet moogles is interfering with the extraction process!

Thorn: Certain are we that it caused the failure!

Kuja: Kill the runt! We're running out of time!

Mog: Kupo...!

Eiko woke up.

Eiko: Mog... No, Mog. Hide behind me... Mog? What is it?

Mog: Eiko, thank you for everything.

Eiko: Mog, what are you saying?

Mog: Don't worry, kupo. I will always be with you, kupo.

Eiko: Mog!

Zidane's group approaches closer.

Zidane: This way!? Whoa!

A bright light came from Mog who is sacrificing herself to help Eiko.

Eiko: Mog!

Zorn: We will put you to death!

Thorn: Put you to death, we will!

Eiko fights Zorn and Thorn.

Mog: Eiko! Use Terra Homing, kupo!

Eiko: Okay!

Eiko summons Terra Homing and it KO'd Zorn and Thorn. After that...

Mog: I wanted to be by your side, Eiko... so I became Mog. Don't worry. I'll always watch over you, kupo.

Later, Zidane's group arrived.

Zidane: !!! Eiko, are you okay?

Eiko: I'm alright. Mog saved me... I never knew that Mog was an eidolon. She always looked after me... disguised as a moogle. Even though... even though she was weak... She fought her best to protect me.

Zidane: So that's what happened...

Suddenly, a ribbon fell from the air and Eiko caught it.

Eiko: Mog's ribbon... Mog...

Eiko received Ribbon.

Zidane: It's alright, Eiko. Mog'll always watching over you.

Eiko: You're right...

Kuja: How can that-That moogle went into a Trance!?

Zidane: Kuja!

Kuja: So...an eruption of anger against one's surroundings induces a complete Trance! It's not the will to live, nor is it the desire to protect another!

Zidane: Man, you're really goin' off! Hello!?

Kuja: That means...I simply need a powerful soul, even if that soul is not my own! No, wait... And it can be found there! Hahahaha!!

Zidane: Kuja! What are you plotting?

Kuja: I am done with you!

Vivi: W-Wait a minute!

Vivi tried to approach closer, but the jesters (Zorn and Thorn) got in the way.

Zidane: Vivi! Look out!

Kuja: Don't worry, I hear these twins put on quite a good show. Of course, they're really not twins at all...

Kuja left.

Vivi: Wait! What about the black mages?

Zidane: No, Vivi! It's too dangerous! Whoa!

The jesters are reacting.

Eiko: Zidane, something's wrong.

Zidane: I thought we defeated them!

The jesters formed into Meltigemini. Zidane's group fights Meltigemini. After defeating it...

Zidane: Vivi, where's Kuja? Did he get away!? Vivi?

Vivi: Everyone knew he was lying...but they still followed him. He said that our life spans can't be extended, and that we were fools for believing him.

Zidane: What!? Kuja said that?

Black Mage No. 78: I-I'm so sorry...for all I've done...

Zidane: You guys don't have to apologize. Where are the others?

Vivi: They were so shocked to hear it, they're all sitting down over there. Zidane! What am I supposed to tell them!?

Zidane: Vivi...

The Black Mages left.

Zidane: Hey, Vivi, where're you going?

Vivi: All I can do...is just sit with them.

Vivi left the scene.

Zidane: That bastard! When I get my hands on him-

Woman: Pardon me, but is someone there?

Zidane's group goes inside the woman's room.

Woman: Who might you be? Where has that...Kuja gone?

Zidane: Oh, him. He split, lady.

Woman: What? You chased him away? I know not who you are, but you have my sincere gratitude.

Dagger: ...

Woman: Could this be...Princess Garnet? Why it is! It is you!

Dagger: ...

Woman: Oh, how long has it been! I haven't seen Your Highness for ages! Why, look how you've grown... So, whatever brought you to this dreadful place?

Zidane: Who is this lady? What's a friend of yours doing here, anyway?

Regent Cid: Oh! My darling <ribbit> Hilda! I finally found you <ribbit>!

Hilda (the woman): I do not remember ever marrying a toad.

Regent Cid: I-It's me <ribbit>! Cid!

Hilda: Of course, that moustache... It really is you!

Regent Cid: Hilda, come back to the castle <ribbit> and return me to my former self <ribbit>!

Hilda: Dreadfully sorry, my sugar cup, but I surrendered your favorite airship to a man named Kuja.

Regent Cid: Forget about it <ribbit>! As long as you're alright <ribbit>!

Hilda: Oh, my sweet froggy-woggy!

Eiko: So, uhh... You know Kuja? I'm gonna make him pay! Please tell me about him!

Hilda: Very well, my dear. I shall tell you everything once we reach Lindblum.

Zidane's group and everyone got back to Lindblum. In the castle...

Regent Cid: <Ribbit!> Kuja didn't touch you, did he?

Hilda: His soul was filled with hate, but he was polite to me. He just talked an awful lot.

Regent Cid: What about? <Ribbit!>

Hilda: Well, he divulged his master plan to me. I didn't even have to ask. It was tiresome. But, what he spoke of... It was truly a scene from a nightmare.

Regent Cid: What did he say?

Hilda: That he was not of this world. He said his aim was to use this world to acquire an even more destructive power... The taking of Hilda Garde 1 was a part of this process.

Regent Cid: We must tell Zidane about this! <Ribbit!> You have valuable information!

Hilda: Which lead me to believe that my abduction wasn't a part of his plan. He was a hopeless narcissist, but... But at least he wasn't a skirt-chaser, like you.

Regent Cid: ...Ugh! You just hit me where it hurts most. <Ribbit!> I'm sorry about that! That's why I risked my life to rescue you!

Hilda: Oh, really? Are you sure you weren't there to take back Hilda Garde 1?

Regent Cid: I'm not lying! <Ribbit!> I apologize! So please turn me back! <Ribbit!> I'm sick of being an oglop or a frog! I'll never cheat on you ever again! <Ribbit!> I promise!

Hilda: ...Can your words be trusted?

Regent Cid: I don't' lie! <Ribbit!> I swear on my father's name!

Hilda: Alright. I'll turn you back. But it's going to be much worse if you ever cheat on me again!

Regent Cid: I...I understand! Now turn me back!

Hilda: Maybe I'll turn you into a hedgehog pie.

Regent Cid: Erk... P-Please, no! <Ribbit!> Now turn me back!

Hilda: Alright, alright.

Hilda kisses Regent Cid and suddenly, Regent Cid is turned back to a human being.

Regent Cid: Finally... Ribbit! I'm human again! Gwok! I can concentrate on building Hilda Garde 3!

Hilda:

Regent Cid: ...D-Darn it! I must stop that.

Hilda: Dear...

Regent Cid: I'm sorry about everything, Hilda.

Regent Cid and Hilda embrace each other. The next morning...

Voice: Zidane...

Zidane: Hmm...? Dagger?

Voice: Mr. Zidane...

Zidane: Why are you calling me 'Mister' Zidane...?

Soldier: Mr. Zidane! Please get up!

Zidane: ! Oh, it was just a dream... What's up?

Soldier: Lady Hilda is calling a meeting. Please go to the conference room.

Zidane: Okay. I just wish I could've dreamt a bit longer...

Soldier: Huh?

Zidane: Oh, it's nothing. Don't worry about it.

Zidane proceeds to the conference room. In there...

Zidane: Who's that guy?

Freya: ...It's Regent Cid.

Zidane: WHAAAT!?

Regent Cid: ...Still hasn't got any manners. Ribb- Ahem! Still haven't learned your manners!

Zidane: You can stop the frog-talk now.

Regent Cid: S-Silence! Ribbit!

Zidane: ...Oh well.

Regent Cid: Ugh... I didn't gather you all to talk about that. I called for this meeting to tell you about what I learned while in Kuja's captivity. It may provide a hint about where he may be. Listen carefully.

Steiner: ...I don't see the princess. I shall look for her.

Regent Cid: I will begin constructing Hilda Garde 3. The Blue Narciss will be used for its construction. Now, Hilda will tell you the rest. Hilda?

Regent Cid left.

Zidane: So? What did Kuja discuss with you?

Hilda: Some parts of story may be hard to believe, but please hear me out. ...Kuja plans to use this world as a means of acquiring an even greater power.

Zidane: Greater power? What would he do with it?

Hilda: I don't know... He indicated that he wasn't of this world.

Everyone: !!!

Zidane: What?

Hilda: We call our world Gaia. But he called his birthplace Terra.

Freya: Terra, huh...?

Hilda: This Terra seems to be connected with a place called the Shimmering Island.

Zidane: I don't know where Kuja went, but maybe we can find him if we go there...

Hilda: ...Unfortunately, you can't get directly to Terra from the Shimmering Island.

Amarant: Of course you can't. Everyone would've discovered this 'other world' by now if it were that easy.

Zidane: So, what do we do?

Hilda: ...I'll tell you. The gateway that connects the two worlds is sealed, but Kuja said there is a place where the seal can be broken.

Zidane: Where's that?

Hilda: He said it's an old castle located in the northern area of the Forgotten Continent. An explorer left a record of his trip to this particular castle on the Forgotten Continent. If I remember correctly, he wrote that the cliffs were too steep to explore. Other than that, very little is known about the Forgotten Continent... Well, since this castle doesn't have a name, let's call it Ipsen's Castle.

Zidane: Ipsen's Castle, huh...? Yeah, we don't know anything about the world beyond our continent...

Hilda: ...That's all I heard. You may find a clue if you go to Ipsen's Castle.

Eiko: Did you ask Kuja about all of this?

Hilda: These are all things he discussed voluntarily. He became very impassioned as he spoke... And he volunteered information without even my asking. He probably thought telling me his plans wouldn't affect his grand scheme.

Amarant: He's right. His power is great, and we're at a disadvantage.

Vivi: But I can't forgive Kuja! He toyed with my friends' lives!

Zidane: Now we know where we need to go. The problem is getting there. I guess we'll have to wait until Cid finishes building Hilda Garde 3...

Steiner suddenly came in.

Steiner: Zidane! I bring troubling news!

Zidane: What? What now?

Steiner: I cannot find the princess! I've looked all over Lindblum! The members of Tantalus aided me in my search, but...

Zidane: She's not in Lindblum? ...Then there's only one place.

Steiner: Do you know where she is?

Zidane: I think so... You guys wait here in Lindblum. I'll be right back.

Zidane goes to Alexandria. In there, we are now with Cinna's crew.

Cinna: Ahhh! Where are you guys going!?

Zenero: We're gonna look for Dagger!

Benero: Is there anyone else we need to look for?

Cinna: No! But we looked over there already! Go someplace where we haven't already looked!

Cinna left.

Zenero: Cinna's so demanding...

Benero: True, true...

The screen switches to Blank and Marcus.

Blank: Hey, Ruby!

Ruby: Blank! Marcus! How y'all doin'?

Blank: We're doing alright. How's show business, Ruby?

Ruby: Well, the money ain't no good, but I'm havin' fun. I like it.

Blank: That's great! Our hideout in Lindblum got completely destroyed. It's gonna take a miracle to fix the place.

Marcus: Bro, we better...

Blank: Oh! Sorry! We came to Alexandria for a reason. Have you seen Dagger?

Ruby: Dagger...? Naw, I ain't seen her. What about her? You fixin' to kidnap her again?

Marcus: No, we're looking for her this time.

Ruby: I was only kiddin' Marcus. I'll ask the patrons to be on the lookout.

Blank: Thanks, Ruby!

Blank and Marcus left.

Ruby: I wonder if Zidane is here with these good ol' boys...?

The screen switches to Zidane.

Zidane: This is strange... I was sure that she'd be back in Alexandria...
Where else can I look?

Baku arrived.

Baku: Hey, Zidane! I've been lookin' for ya!

Zidane: Boss! Have you found Dagger?

Baku: Nah... Can't find her anywhere! I didn't find Dagger, but... I think
I saw that chick...

Zidane: That chick?

Baku: Yeah, you know, that chick! I'm gonna check again.

Zidane: Hey, wait! Who is she? What are you talking about!?

Zidane follows Baku.

Zidane: Where are you going, Boss? Is she here?

Baku: She was standin' over there just a second ago...

Zidane: (looking at the dock) Over there...? !

Zidane saw Beatrix.

Zidane: Is that who I think it is?

Zidane runs to the dock but Beatrix went somewhere else.

Zidane: Hey!

Zidane runs to the bridge.

Zidane: Ah, over there!

Zidane runs to the dock again.

Zidane: Where did she go...?

Beatrix appeared on Baku's area.

Baku: Still alive, eh?

Beatrix: You are...Baku?

Baku: Yup, I'm the man who abducted yer princess!

Beatrix: Let us forget about that. It happened a long time ago...

Baku: You got a big heart, unlike that knucklehead, Steiner. No wonder
the women are runnin' the show here. Gwahahaha!

Zidane: Boss! You must've seen Beatrix! (saw Beatrix) Hey!

Later in the other area...

Beatrix: As you can see, Alexandria was completely destroyed... Steiner and I did our best to protect Alexandria... ..but our efforts were in vain.

Zidane: Steiner was worried about you. Why haven't you contacted him? Dagger's still in shock. She's been mute ever since the attack.

Beatrix: She is...? Then it is better for her not to return to this city for a while... It won't do her any good to see Alexandria like this...

Zidane: Well, here's the thing... We can't find her. I thought she'd be back here, but I can't find her anywhere.

Beatrix: She is back in Alexandria? But she's nowhere to be found...? Have you looked in the resting place?

Zidane: 'Resting place'?

Beatrix: Yes, if she is back in Alexandria, I am certain that she will be there. ...There are a couple a favors I'd like to ask you... If you see Princess Garnet, please tell her not to worry about Alexandria... She must take care of herself first.

Zidane: Sure. What else?

Beatrix: I'd like you to give something to her.

Zidane received Garnet.

Beatrix: Maybe it will help the princess get through this time of uncertainty...

Zidane proceeds to the resting place. In there...

Zidane: I've been looking for you, Dagger.

Dagger: Zidane!

Dagger mysteriously got her voice back.

Zidane: You can talk again!?

Dagger: I... I've been thinking since...the disaster. I've been thinking that I have to become a queen and bring back peace to Alexandria. That's why I came back here, but... Can I stay with you guys for a while longer?

Zidane: Can I ask why?

Dagger: When my mother was still alive... My primary concern was how to talk and look like a princess. Those were the only things on my mind... That didn't change when my mother died and I was about to become a queen... I only thought about how to look and act like a queen. I don't think the people will accept me as their queen the way I am right now.

Zidane: I don't know about that.

Dagger: I have no right to rule over this country...

Zidane: Hmm... Oh, I almost forgot! Beatrix wanted me to give this to you.

Dagger: Is this...a garnet?

Zidane: That's right... Isn't it pretty?

Dagger: It's beautiful...

Zidane: That gem used to be just another ordinary stone... The stone made a wish... 'I want to shine!' The stone traveled from person to person, in keeping with its wish... And now, it's shining in your hand, Dagger. If you're willing to make an effort... You'll shine, too, someday! The day will come when Alexandria needs you! There's no rush. The important thing is to have the desire.

Dagger: Thanks... I have to apologize for using you guys as an excuse to run away from my responsibilities...

Zidane: Hey, what's important is that you honestly want to stay with us...

Dagger: Zidane...? Can I borrow that knife again...?

Zidane: Which one?

Dagger: The one that helped me make my last big decision...

Dagger snatched the dagger from Zidane.

Dagger: I'm borrowing this! Zidane... Remember the way I was...for me.

We watch a movie of Dagger using Zidane's dagger to cut her long hair off. The hair flew all over the place. Dagger now has short hair. Then, the Hilda Garde 3 (airship) comes out of Lindblum. In the airship, Zidane and Dagger arrived at the control room.

Eiko: Wh-Wh-Wh-What happened!? What happened to your hair!?

Steiner: P-P-Princess!!! What have you done!?

Eiko: I know! Zidane broke your heart, didn't he!? How dare he-

Steiner: (to Zidane) I-I-Is that true!?

Zidane: Whoa, hold on. Don't jump to conclusions!

Dagger: Zidane's right, Eiko.

Steiner: !?

Eiko: Dagger! You can talk again?

Dagger: Yes... I'm sorry I made you all worry.

Eiko: It's okay, but your hair... It was so beautiful.

Dagger: Short hair doesn't suit me?

Eiko: Oh, no. You look great!

Dagger: Thanks, Eiko.

Zidane: It's still too early to celebrate... Erin! You know our destination.

Erin: Yes, Ipsen's Castle on the Forgotten Continent!

Zidane: That's right. We'll go there to find out how to enter Terra through the 'Shimmering Island.' I'm sure we'll find out more about what's going on once we reach Terra. Yeah... And hopefully, we'll learn about what Kuja wants to achieve...

Erin: The location of the Ipsen's Castle has been marked on the map based on Lady Hilda's information.

Crew Member: Excuse me! Please let me know if you'd like to switch out your party members! I shall assist you in any way that I can during your journey.

Zidane: You don't have to be so formal. Let's just relax and enjoy our flight.

The airship flies to Ipsen's Castle. Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Eiko for his group. They go into Ipsen's Castle. In there...

Zidane: Is this the old castle Hilda told us about? What a strange looking place... Like it's upside down or something... Alright, I'll take 3 of you with me. The rest of you secure this spot.

Amarant: ...Hey, Zidane.

Zidane: ...? What's up, Amarant?

Amarant: I work alone. Always have, always will. I don't know why you bother carryin' dead weight all the time.

Zidane: What's your point?

Amarant: I'm sayin' working alone beats working in a team any day, and I'm gonna prove it. Hilda said there's some key here to break the seal, am I right?

Zidane: Yeah.

Amarant: Let's see who finds it first. I'll be going by myself, of course.

Steiner: Amarant! You selfish, ignorant fool!

Zidane: Calm down, Rusty.

Steiner: B-But...!

Zidane: (What should I do?) ...Sorry, I can't let you do that.

Amarant: That's too bad. I'm going anyway.

Zidane:

Amarant: Well, see you later.

Freya: ...Are you sure about this, Zidane?

Zidane: What can I do? I can't change the way he thinks. Let's get going, everyone! We'll beat Amarant at his own game!

Inside Ipsen's Castle, Zidane's group make their way to the map room. In there, Zidane's group saw Amarant.

Zidane: !

Amarant: You're late, Zidane, and I'm the winner. See how much time you lose by working with others?

Zidane: ...Have you figured out how to break the seal?

Amarant: Take a look at that wall. Maybe you can figure it out. But it's no longer my concern.

Zidane: What do you mean?

Amarant: I proved myself right. I don't need to follow you around anymore. We may be enemies next time we meet... See ya.

Amarant left.

Eiko: Ugh! Who does he think he is!?

Zidane: ...It's his way. We can't change him. ...Let's get going.

Zidane saw four mirrors and takes them.

Zidane: Well, looks like we got what we came here for. Let's go.

Dagger: You were staring at that mirror for a long time. Anything interesting?

Zidane: Like Hilda said, those things on the wall must have something to do with the seal. Let's think about that later. We need to get out.

Voice of Taharka: M-Mirror... Return...to me...

Zidane: Who's there?

Taharka: Energy flow...interrupted... Energy to...Terra... You dare get in the way of Terra's master plan...?

Zidane: Wh-What is this!?

Taharka: My name...is Taharka. Return...my mirrors...

Zidane: You should say please when you ask for things.

Taharka: Fool! You'll regret this...

Zidane's group fights Taharka. After defeating it...

Taharka: One is all, all is one... You'll never break the seal...

Taharka dies. Zidane's group proceeds out of Ipsen's Castle. Out there...

Zidane: Hey, sorry to keep you all waiting.

Vivi: You came out first, Zidane!

Zidane: What happened to Amarant?

Nobody knows.

Zidane: He was waiting for us at the top and left as soon as we got there! I thought he took off! Is he still inside...? You guys wait here. I'm gonna go look for him.

Zidane searches for Amarant. Zidane finally found him.

Amarant: Uh...

Zidane: Who's there?

Amarant: Zidane...? Why did you come back...?

Zidane: Amarant? What happened to you?

Amarant: Answer my question... I told you we might be enemies next time we met... Or did you come back to mock me?

Zidane: You say some strange things. The guys outside told me that you hadn't come out yet. That's why I came here looking for you.

Amarant: We don't have anything to do with each other anymore... You don't have anything to gain from this. Or do you? I don't understand you. I don't understand the way you think...

Zidane: Who cares about what I have to gain? You need help right now.

Amarant: You don't care...? You're willing to put yourself at risk to save me?

Zidane: Come on. We've helped each other many times since we joined forces. You're a part of the team. That's all that matters. I don't know why I'm doing this, but I can't just walk away. It goes against my nature.

Amarant: And that's what being a part of the team means...?

Zidane: Isn't it? Come on, that's enough talk. Let's get outta here!

Zidane and Amarant makes their way out of Ipsen's Castle. Outside...

Zidane: Listen up, everyone. Let's sort out what we found in the castle. On top of this castle is a mural, a map of the world. There were 4 mirrors on the mural. The writing on the mirrors was in the language only I can read. 'My power is protected under the shaking ground.' 'My power is protected behind a tornado.' 'My power is protected high atop a fiery mountain.' 'My power is protected underwater, surrounded by the earth.' I'm sure the mirrors are pointing

us to the locations that help us break the seal. What the monster said before he perished provided us with a clue about the seal... 'One is all. All is one.' Meaning there is a connection between these 4 seals...

Later, everyone gathered together in the airship.

Dagger: So, what do we do? Are we going to take each location one by one? 'One is all, all are one'... We're going to conquer all 4 locations at once.

Eiko: We're not going together like we always do?

Zidane: No. I'm going to drop off of us in each location.

Eiko: I see... Hey, I'll go with Dagger!

Zidane: What? Why...?

Eiko: It's called 'ladies first,' Zidane! And we girls have things to talk about!

Zidane: Uh-huh. Is that okay with you, Dagger?

Dagger: Sure, but... Where are we going first?

Zidane: Well... The nearest location would be...

Crew Member: One of the locations you mentioned is just north of us!

Zidane: Oh, you were listening to us?

Crew Member: I've been sailor for a long time! I'm confident in my sense of direction. 'My power is protected underwater, surrounded by the earth.' The location must have something to do with water; why not go there first?

Zidane: Alright... Thanks for your help.

Crew Member: Please don't hesitate to ask me if you forget your destination! And please remember to equip yourselves properly while we are onboard!

Zidane: You can relax, buddy. You're beginning to sound like someone I know.

Steiner: ?

Zidane: Alright, Erin! Let's go!

Erin: Yes, sir! Now departing!

The airship flies to the Water Shrine. In there...

Zidane: Are you gonna be okay by yourselves?

Dagger: You're the one who suggested we split up.

Eiko: What? Don't you trust Dagger?

Zidane: It's not that I don't trust you...

Eiko: Hmph! You just wanted to pair up with Dagger!

Dagger: You better get going. We need to take all points simultaneously.

Zidane: You're right...

Dagger: Where are you going next, and who are you going to drop off?

Zidane: 'My power is protected high atop a fiery mountain.' I think I'll ask Freya and Amarant to take that location.

Eiko: Alright, now, get going! Don't make us ladies wait!

Zidane: I'll be back to get you guys soon!

Zidane got back on the airship.

Eiko: Well, now that the men are gone, we can do all the girl talk we want!

Dagger: ...Girl talk?

The airship flies to the Fire Shrine. In the airship...

Crew Member: We're going to overheat!

Zidane: Just a little closer!

Freya: Zidane! The heat is going to kill the engine if we get any closer!

Zidane: Okay... When we get closer to the volcano, you two head for the shrine's entrance.

Amarant: ...Why do I have to go with her?

Zidane: Oh, sorry. Did you wanna go with Eiko?

Amarant:

Zidane: Good luck!

Freya and Amarant left for the Fire Shrine.

Zidane: Alright, our next destination is...'protected behind a tornado. Pairing up Steiner and Quina seems like a bad idea... I think I'll ask Vivi to babysit Steiner.

The airship flies to the Wind Shrine. In the airship...

Vivi: W-Wow, the wind is strong...

Zidane: It's the wind shrine, so it's protected by strong gusts... Be careful not to get blown away!

Steiner: There is no need to worry! Master Vivi, just follow me.

Vivi: O-Okay...

Steiner: See? There is nothing to fear!

Vivi: Really?

Vivi got blown back from the wind.

Steiner: Master Vivi!

Zidane: You're okay because you're wearing armor.

Steiner: Let us move forward, master Vivi!

Steiner and Vivi left for Wind Shrine.

Zidane: Are they gonna be okay...? But I'm with Quina. I should worry more about myself. We should check our equipment and use what blue magic Quina can use... 'My power is protected under the shaking ground,' huh...?

The airship flies to the Earth Shrine. In there...

Zidane: Let's get going...

Quina: Ah, Zidane. You want go with me!

Zidane: Well... I sort of got stuck with the leftovers...

Quina: You no have to explain! I so happy.

Zidane: Huh?

Quina: There old saying in my tribe... 'Leftovers good!'

Zidane: ...Let's hope we find good things in this cave.

Quina: Is probably full of good food!

Zidane and Quina moves forward.

Quina: Is no one here... Is empty.

Zidane: Yeah...

Suddenly, Zidane and Quina felt a shaking.

Zidane: Huh?

Quina: What wrong?

Zidane: Did the ground just shake...?

Zidane and Quina jumped to safety after the walls blocked them in. The screen switches to Dagger and Eiko.

Eiko: This place is empty...

Dagger: It's too quiet...

Eiko: They probably got scared of us and ran away!

Dagger: I hope so...

Eiko: Aaargh! I hate it when you fret like that! That's why I always worry about you!

Dagger: Wh-What are you talking about?

Eiko: Oh, nothing. I just have a lot of things on my mind...

Dagger: !? Look out!

An ice fell on the ground. The screen switches to Zidane and Quina.

Quina: Aiyaaa! We almost flat like pancake!

Zidane: I hope there aren't too many more of those. Dagger... Please be safe...

The screen switches to Dagger and Eiko.

Eiko: W-What the-

Dagger: It's a trap! Be careful...

Another ice fell near Dagger and Eiko.

Eiko: Aaah!

Dagger: Let's go, Eiko!

Dagger and Eiko ran. The screen switches to Zidane and Quina.

Quina: Aha! Is place to put mirror.

Zidane approaches the altar.

Zidane: I'll place the mirror right here...

Earth Guard: I've been waiting for you...

Zidane: !?

The screen switches to Freya and Amarant.

Freya: That was too easy... It must have been disappointing for you.

Amarant:

Freya: Now, I'll place the mirror here...

Amarant: !? Freya, stand back!

Freya: !?

The Fire Guard suddenly appeared.

Fire Guard: It's just as Kuja said... He said I should expect intruders.

The screen switches to Zidane and Quina.

Zidane: Are you under Kuja's command!?

Quina: He not good person! Why you work for him?

Earth Guard: No... We are the guardians of Terra...

Zidane: Guardians of Terra...?

The screen switches to Freya and Amarant.

Fire Guard: Yes, we are the guardians of Terra. Filled with the power of Terra itself...

Freya: What is Terra!?

Fire Guard: We did not become guardians to chat with mortals... We derive pleasure from ending your worthless lives...

Amarant: Just to prove how powerful you are...

Fire Guard: So you understand. But will that knowledge help you?

Amarant: Foolish.

Fire Guard: What?

Amarant: Picking fights with strangers in a place like this... I used to know someone like that. He was a loser... He refused to find beneficial ways to use his power. Instead, he'd seek out people to fight...

Freya: Amarant...

Fire Guard: What...are you talking about?

Freya: We'll show you what he means!

Fire Guard: Interesting...but you'll regret this!

Freya and Amarant are fighting Fire Guard. The screen switches to Vivi and Steiner.

Steiner: Grahhh!!!

Vivi: Ahhh!!!

Wind Guard: Finished already? Such weaklings.

Steiner: You...!

Vivi: He's too fast! I can't target him with my magic. We can't take him on with just the two of us...

Steiner: Master Vivi! A true man never gives up in a fight!

Vivi: But...

Steiner: We can defeat this monster if we work together!

Wind Guard: So? Which one of you will perish first?

Steiner: Silence! I shall vanquish you!

Vivi: What!?

Steiner: ...Master Vivi, I shall attempt to hold him down. You attack him with your magic while I hold him down!

Vivi: But...what if I miss the target...?

Steiner: I trust you, Vivi.

Vivi: ...Okay.

Steiner: AAAAAAAAAARGH!!!

Steiner and Vivi starts fighting the Wind Guard. The screen switches to Zidane and Quina.

Earth Guard: Kuja told us there'd be eight rats...

Zidane: Sorry, it's just the two of us. Did you have a feast prepared?

Quina: You no worry! We eat everything.

Earth Guard: Ah, so you're attempting to conquer all 4 of the shrines at once... How futile.

Zidane: We'll see about that!

Quina: Must try eating before we give up!

Earth Guard: What will you lower life-forms do on Terra?

Zidane: We won't know until we get there!

Quina: Must eat to find out what taste good! Is my lesson from traveling around world.

Earth Guard: Good... I shall show you the meaning of fear!

Zidane and Quina fights Earth Guardian. After defeating it...

Zidane: All done!

Quina: I wonder if everyone okay?

Zidane: Yeah, I'm pretty sure they're waiting for us by now.

Quina: Right! We go back to airship now.

The screen switches to Eiko and Dagger.

Eiko: Fresh air! Finally! Zidane is unbelievable.... Asking us ladies to fight a monster like that... Oh my gosh!!!

Dagger: What's wrong, Eiko?

Eiko: Oh, I completely forgot! And we're all alone, too!

Dagger: Wh-What is it?

Eiko: There's a question I need to ask you! I've been waiting for a chance to ask you for the longest time! Give me an honest answer, okay?

Dagger: Well, you have to ask the question before I can answer...

Eiko: ...Do you love... Zidane?

Dagger: Wh-What? Why...?

Eiko: You have to answer me! Do you love him or not?

The airship arrived.

Eiko: Hey, it's the airship! Zidane's back!

Dagger:

Eiko: Did you just say something, Dagger?

Dagger: Let's go, Eiko!

Eiko: H-Hey, wait! That's not fair!

In the airship...

Zidane: Well, now that we've got everyone, we can head to Shimmering Island... (saw Amarant) Hey, Amarant. I didn't know you were here.

Amarant: So we'll go to Shimmering Island, then to Terra?

Zidane: Yeah. It's near Esto Gaza. It won't take long.

Amarant:

Tell me something... What motivates you to do that?

Zidane: What motivates me...? I want to find out what Kuja is after. I also want to know more about the planet Terra....

Amarant: Can't resist the urge to step into an unknown world, huh...?

Zidane: What, you think I'm going there just to satisfy my curiosity?

Amarant: Am I wrong?

Zidane: No, I guess you're right.

Amarant: I'm beginning to understand why he won and I lost... I lost against his way of thinking...

The airship flew to Shimmering Island. In the airship...

Crew Member: Mister Zidane! I'm showing abnormal readings!

Erin: It feels like the ship is getting sucked in!

Steiner: Zidane! It might be dangerous to keep going!

Eiko: Are we gonna bust in on the airship!?

Zidane: All we know is that this is the entrance...

Dagger: I heard the people of Esto Gaza call it the 'Spirit Road'...

Zidane: The path that leads souls to Terra...

Dagger: Maybe it's a teleportation gate, like the one in Kuja's hideout...

Erin: Mister Zidane! We're going to get sucked in! What shall I do!?

Eiko: What now, Zidane? We may not be able to turn back!

Zidane: Alright, then... Keep moving forward! We're going out on the deck!

Eiko: What do you mean?

Zidane: If Dagger is right, we can jump into the teleporter!

Dagger: From this height!?

Zidane: We'll be fine! Considering all that we've been through, this is nothing!

We watch a movie of Zidane's group jumping down into the teleporter. Zidane's group are now in Terra.

Zidane: Could this be...Terra?

Zidane: What's this light? Could it be...

A flash appeared.

Zidane: !?

The old man appeared.

Old Man: So you finally came. The time has come at last... The one who folds time is here.

Zidane: Who the heck are you!?

Old Man: Ask my name, will you? Then let us ask... What is your name?

Zidane: Me!? My name is-

Old Man: What is you name?

Zidane: Hey, what's your problem!? I'm trying to tell you my name.

Old Man: So you believe a given name has meaning... Boy, you have been bewitched by the light of the blue moon.

Zidane: What do you know? You must be from Terra.

Old Man: You know nothing, and that is all. Come and see for yourself... See what Terra is, and what you are...

Zidane: H-Hey, hang on!

The old man disappeared.

Zidane: He's gone...

Dagger: Zidane!

Dagger arrived.

Zidane: Dagger! Are you alright?

Dagger: Yes. Everyone's fine. Come, let's hurry...

Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Quina for his group. Zidane's group moves on. On his way, Zidane saw a mysterious girl and follows her. Zidane's group arrived at Bran Bal.

Zidane: What the heck...? What is this place?

Dagger: It looks really artificial. So different than before.

Zidane: Yeah... But it doesn't seem very lively.

Girl: Welcome home.

Zidane: !?

Girl: This is where you belong. The place to which you shall offer yourself... ...is here.

The girl disappeared.

Zidane: Hold on a second! What the heck are you talking about!? Wh-What the-

We watch a movie of Zidane and Dagger seeing the Invincible coming up. Dagger suddenly see a flashback of the past with the eye scope and she collapsed.

Zidane: Dagger! Wake up! Dagger! Dammit! What the heck is going on!?

Voice of the Old Man: You are completely oblivious. Just like a newborn child. You don't know why you were given life, or for what purpose you exist... You simply shout to emphasize your life...your own existence. You are completely oblivious.

Later...

Zidane: We gotta find a place for her to rest!

Steiner: Zidane! Leave the princess to me. You must go reconnoiter at once!

Zidane: Yeah, you're right. There's gotta be some place around here... Watch over her, Steiner! I'll be right back!

Zidane's group proceeds to the village of Bran Bal. In there...

Zidane: !? Wh-What's going on? Everyone has a tail...and their hair is just like mine!

Zidane proceeds to the inn. In there...

Zidane: This looks like a good place for Dagger to get some rest. But...what's up with everyone here? They're all so...stiff. I dunno why...but I have a bad feeling about this place. Well, first things first. I gotta bring Dagger back here!

Meanwhile...

Eiko: 'Scuse me... (to the citizen) Do you have any medicine...? ... (to the other citizen) Hello... Is there a place I can buy some medicine around here?

Citizen: ...

Eiko: Hello!? I'm asking if you have any medicine! Ngaaa! How come this place is full of weirdos? Everyone has a tail like Zidane... Aww, if I could find some Pimo-pimo herbs, I could make some wake-up powder for her... But is this my lucky day? No! (saw the mysterious girl) Huh!? Found ya! You're that girl, right? It's your fault Dagger collapsed, you know... Oh, never mind. Say! Don't you have any medicine at all?

Girl: She will soon awaken.

Eiko: How do you know?

Girl: Where is your man?

Eiko: M-My man? MY man!? Are you talking about Zidane!? Even I never called him that! But too bad for you! He and Dagger are super hot for each other! You don't have a chance with him.

Girl: Tell him I am waiting in the underground laboratory.

The girl left.

Eiko: Oh, the nerve! What makes you think I'd tell him that!? Hey, where do you think you're going!? What a bimbo! Uh-oh! I don't have time for this!

In the inn...

Zidane: Dagger...

Steiner: Princess... Why must you suffer more...?

Zidane: Dammit!

Freya: What's the matter, Zidane? You haven't been yourself at all.

Zidane: What the heck do you mean, I haven't been myself...?

Freya: ...

Zidane: I'm sorry... I don't even know what's wrong with me. I just...I just can't concentrate with this blue light...

Dagger: Ah... Uhhh...

Steiner: Princess! You have awoken!

Freya: What made you lose consciousness so suddenly?

Dagger: I remembered.

Zidane: Remembered what?

Dagger: It wasn't the storm that destroyed Madain Sari. It was...It was the eye on that airship that destroyed Madain Sari. You remember, don't you? The eye was also there when Alexandria was leveled.

Freya: Yes, there was a large eye in the sky above from which light emanated.

Zidane: Now that you mention it... It was there when Bahamut went wild at the Iifa Tree.

Dagger: Yes... It was there in the sky. It must be the same airship.

Steiner: WHAT!? Then that must be the ship that slew Her Majesty...

Zidane: Rusty!

Steiner: Oh... I-I'm sorry, Princess!

Dagger: Don't worry about it. I've already come to terms with that. That ship took everything from me... It took away my parents, my homeland, Alexandria...everything.

Freya: How terrible...

Suddenly, Eiko came in the inn.

Eiko: Dagger! Are you alright?

Dagger: Yes, I'm fine...

Eiko: No, you're not! You're still pale! You gotta rest! Hmm? How come everyone looks so pale? What's wrong?

Freya: No need to be concerned. A strange place such as this is cause enough for exhaustion.

Eiko: Oh... Hey! Where are you going, Zidane? Oh, that's right! That weird girl! The girl that led us here said something strange again! She said she was waiting for you in some underground laboratory! What a pervert!

Zidane walked out of the inn.

Eiko: Zidane?

Zidane proceeds to the underground laboratory. In there, Zidane talks to the girl.

Zidane: ... Oh, so that's what's going on... Geez, I should've guessed... So, this is what you wanted to show me?

Girl: Yes. I am glad you understand.

Zidane: I don't wanna understand! Sorry, but I'm not like that. I mean all these guys with tails, who look just like me... They're bunch of zombies.

Girl: They are my peers. We are Genomes. We live in this village.

Zidane: Genomes? Is that what they're called?

Girl: Not just them, but you and me, too. It is the name of the seed given to all of us. Its name is Genome.

Zidane: Talk about a let-down. Who would've guessed that the home I've yearned for would be a dump like this. No wonder I never found it. It's not even on Gaia!

Girl: Why are you not happy? You have returned to the place of your birth.

Zidane: Happy? You guys can process that emotion? Look at 'em! Look at all their blank faces!

Girl: What can we do? After all, we are made that way. And we are built to watch over each other and work together as soulless Genomes.

Zidane: What's it all for!? Get to the point already! How come I grew up on Gaia if I was born here!? I'm alive! I have a soul! Why is everyone here so...

Girl: Because you are...special.

Zidane: What!?

Girl: We are mere vessels. You have been given a greater purpose. The will of Garland is absolute...

Zidane: Garland? Who's that?

The girl went upstairs and Zidane follows her. In the first floor...

Girl: Garland watches over this planet. His mission is to restore the people of Terra.

Zidane: R-Restore the people of Terra? You mean people besides these guys here?

Girl: They are merely vessels. So am I, and so are you. But the true people of Terra have been asleep for ages, waiting for their time to come. When the time is right, the light of this planet will change from blue to red, and Gaia will become Terra.

Zidane: Wait a sec! So the people of Terra are out to take over Gaia!?

Girl: What else can there be? Terra has always absorbed new planets to survive. And when the time comes, the souls of the people of Terra will occupy the Genomes. Such is the restoration of the people of Terra.

Zidane: Why do they have to be so tedious!? Why don't they just wipe out with magic like they did Alexandria!?

Girl: Once, Garland tried to use a more forceful method, but failed.

Zidane: Then he should just quit and leave Gaia alone!

Girl: Because of his failure, he was forced to wait a long time. ...To wait until Gaia's civilizations gained tremendous power. The power to use eidolons.

Zidane: So that's why you attacked the summoner's village and destroyed Alexandria.

Girl: Planets have a cycle of souls. Souls are born from the planet, and then return to it. Garland planned to gain control of that very cycle... ...and you were supposed to help him achieve that.

Zidane: What!?

Girl: Garland is waiting for you. Come...

Zidane: What do you think you're doing!? I don't care about all this Terra and Gaia stuff!

Meanwhile in the inn...

Eiko: Zidane isn't back yet. And with Dagger not feeling well... I wonder where he is.

Dagger: Eiko...

Eiko: No, Dagger! You can't get up yet!

Dagger: I'm alright. Listen, I want to ask you a favor.

Eiko: Oh? Just tell me, and I'll get right on it!

Dagger: I want you to go find Zidane.

Eiko: Huh? Oh, sure. Okay. Oh, I get it! You're getting jealous!

Dagger: No, I'm not... I just have a feeling something terrible is going to happen.

Eiko: Alright! I'll go and get him. So you just stay here and rest!

Eiko goes out and there, she saw Vivi.

Vivi: Hey, Eiko. Zidane just went-

Eiko: You saw Zidane!?

Vivi: Uh, yeah...

Eiko: Hello!? Why didn't you stop him!?

Vivi: Huh? How come... He was acting kinda strange. If you're looking for him, I'll go with you!

Vivi joins Eiko. Eiko and Vivi then saw Amarant.

Eiko: Say, Amarant... Did Zidane go this way?

Amarant: Yeah, seems so. He had a real serious look on his face.

Eiko: I knew something was wrong...

Amarant: Gonna go look for him, right?

Eiko: Huh?

Amarant: I'm tryin' to say I'll go with you. Catch my drift?

Amarant joined Eiko's group. Eiko's group moves on and Eiko's group talks to the girl.

Eiko: Now, you listen to me! Where did you take Zidane?

Girl: He went on his own to see Garland.

Eiko: Garland!? Oooo, THAT's a sinister name! But Zidane wouldn't just leave us hanging!

Girl: He went... Yes, he went to find out the reason for his existence.

Eiko: Liar! That's a terrible lie!

Girl: 'I am an enemy of the people of Gaia,' he said as he walked through the gate to Pandemonium.

Eiko: ! We-We gotta tell the others!

Eiko's group went back to Bran Bal.

Girl: Heaven grant the wandering souls eternal repose...

The screen switches to Zidane in Pandemonium.

Zidane: So, this must be Garland's haunted mansion... Talk about bad taste in interior decorating. Alright... Time to teach this tyrant a thing or two...

Zidane moves on.

Voice of the Old Man: So, we meet again.

Zidane: !?

The old man appeared.

Zidane: Who are you!?

Old Man: Twelve years ago, I lost one of my most prized Genomes. I created him and sent him to Gaia to disrupt the cycle of souls there. You are that Genome... I am glad you have returned.

Zidane: Shut up! Nobody tells me what to do! And I didn't come here to answer to you! Lemme guess... You must be Garland!

Garland (old man) And what if I am?

Zidane: Then you're goin' down! But first, you're gonna tell me

everything! Like, why did I grow up on Gaia, and why do you want to destroy it!?

Garland: I have no intention of destroying Gaia. I only wish to make Gaia to Terra.

Zidane: What did you just say!?

Garland: Of course, not everything went as planned. You growing up on Gaia, for example. There is another one built as you were. He may be the one who threw a wrench into my gears.

Zidane: He!? Who the heck are you talking about!?

Garland: Someone you know quite well. Follow me... The time when the aura of Gaia will turn to the crimson glow of Terra has not yet come. I may need your help anyway.

Zidane follows Garland.

Zidane: Stop! Now, tell me everything!

Garland: I constructed the Genomes to be vessels for the souls of the people of Terra when they awaken. About 24 years ago, I gave life to a Genome that was much like you. His will was too strong to make him into a proper vessel, and I even considered discarding him. But then I thought that I should put his strength to use. I sent that Genome as my servant, to disrupt the cycle of souls on Gaia.

Zidane: Yeah, so tell me who he is already!

Garland: Do you not yet know? You and he are so much alike.

Zidane: Alike? I've never met anyone like me...

Garland: You judge by appearances. I mean someone with a soul similar to yours. The one I sent to Gaia might also be called your brother... And his name is Kuja.

Zidane: Kuja!? He's a Genome!? Impossible! He doesn't even have a tail...

Garland: He is only hiding it. He denies his own identity. He rejects the meaning of his existence and tries to assert his own individuality. Don't you see resemblance?

Zidane: Shut up! I'm not like him at all!

Garland: He said the same thing when speaking about the other Genomes: 'I'm not like these guys.'

Zidane continues to follow Garland.

Garland: His ambition was unbecoming of a Genome, but it was perfect for the mission I gave him. To bring war and chaos to Gaia... That was what I sent him to do. To induce an unnaturally chaotic flow.

Zidane: So then, why-

Garland: The disruption of the flow of souls is best brought about by war. And what he did for me far exceeded my greatest expectations.

Zidane: What about me!? How did I end up on Gaia!?

Garland: When you received the gift of life in Bran Bal, Kuja could not bear it. He could not bear to see a Genome with more power than his own; he felt threatened. Kuja discarded you. He dropped you onto Gaia, the world he would destroy.

Zidane: So I was to be your slave, just like Kuja, to start a war on Gaia?

Garland: That is correct. I did not expect Kuja to abandon you, but I believed it was his nature. And to him, bringing war to Gaia would prove his victory over you. Perhaps it is because of his desire to justify his existence that he let you live as well.

Zidane: So, that's why the blood of thousands had to be spilled?

Garland: Are you referring to Kuja's ambition? Or to our plan to disrupt the cycle of souls?

Zidane: Both! And what exactly do you gain by disrupting that cycle of souls, or whatever...

Garland: We must sort the souls. I want to disrupt Gaia's cycle and drain its souls, filling the void with the souls of Terra. To speed the cycle of souls is to speed the work as a whole. Thus, war... And in time... Gaia's souls are gone, and Gaia becomes Terra.

Zidane: But...how!?

Garland: You saw it with your own eyes. You saw the Iifa Tree and the Mist it emits. The role of the Iifa Tree is that of Soul Divider. The Mist you see comprises the stagnant souls of Gaia...

Zidane: Oh yeah? But we stopped the Mist! So much for that!

Garland: All you saw was the back of the tree... Even now, the Iifa Tree blocks the flow of Gaia's souls, while it lets those of Terra flow freely. Come and see for yourself. See the true form of this planet.

Zidane still follows Garland.

Zidane: What is this?

Garland: Think of it as an observatory. A place to measure the radiance of Gaia and Terra.

Zidane: What are you talking about? And what is this weird light?

Garland: That is the center of the planet. The end and the beginning of the cycle of souls. The light remains Gaia's, for now, but when the blue changes to crimson, all will belong to Terra, and its restoration will be complete. That is why I wrapped up the light in the Iifa Tree, to prevent the cycle of the judgment of souls on Gaia from inside the planet. Such is the Iifa Tree's true purpose, its true form. All you saw was its material form. The flow of Gaia's souls cannot be changed simply by stopping the disposal of Mist.

Zidane: So...Kuja is just an angel of death who sends souls to the Tree

of Iifa.

Garland: Yes, my angel of death. But only until you came of age.

Zidane: What do you mean!?

Garland: His soul is not eternal... I was going to create you next, after all.

Zidane: You mean you won't need Kuja's soul once I grow stronger than him?

Garland: Precisely... Soon, that time will come.

Zidane: ...

Zidane approaches closer.

Garland: Well...now you should be fully aware of the meaning of your existence... !?

Zidane: Yeah, I'm aware of all the laughter, all the tears I've shared with the people I grew up with on Gaia.

Garland: Forget all that. You are destined to live among the stars for all eternity. You have the power, the position, and the motive to do it.

Zidane: I wouldn't want that kind of power...if I only had a place to call home... My brothers in Tantalus, Vivi, Freya, Amarant, Quina, Steiner, Eiko, and...Dagger... My home is with them in Gaia! If you say I have a motive, then it's to punish all of you who brought pain to my friends! I'll destroy Terra! That's reason enough for my birth here as a Genome!

Garland: Regrettable... I thought your soul would be perfect for a new angel of death...

Zidane: I AM the new angel of death! Yours!!!

Garland: Don't you know what it means to meet your maker?

Zidane: Shut up! I've heard enough of your crap! I'm taking you out, right here, right now!

Garland: Foolishness... The body becomes a vessel, which greets a new soul...

Zidane: (feeling strange) What's happening!?

Zidane collapsed.

Garland: He's too good to make into a regular Genome... But I have no choice.

The screen switches to Kuja.

Kuja: I can't believe I actually returned to this place, but... Soon... Soon, the power will be mine alone. Mhwahahaha... Just you wait, Garland! And you too, Zidane! I'll exact sweet revenge upon you both for

insulting me! I'll make the people of both Gaia and Terra know whom rules over all of them! Ha-Haha... Ahahahahaha...

Now we are with Zidane unconscious in the room. Zidane is dreaming.

Zidane: Who am I? I don't know anything. I cannot think at all. Zidane!
Yeah... I was called that once. Many people called me that.

Eiko: You always have to show off, don't you?

Zidane: Yeah, maybe I do.

Steiner: Why, you worthless mendicant!

Zidane: Yep... Sounds about right.

Freya: How very becoming of you.

Zidane: Becoming of me...?

Vivi: I really learned a lot by traveling with you, Zidane.

Zidane: Yeah, right. I have nothing to teach...

Quina: You teach me many thing more important than tasty munchies.

Zidane: No! I don't know anything!

Amarant: You call that friendship?

Zidane: Friendship... Friendship...?

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane: I don't know...who I am...

Dagger: You were always there for me, Zidane...

Zidane: I'm so...tired...

Dagger: How come you're always so...?

Zidane: I... I am...an...empty...vessel...

Their dream ended.

Eiko: Zidane!

Zidane: Who?

Vivi: Wake up, Zidane!

Zidane: Who...?

Eiko: Come on, Zidane, wake up!

Zidane: Ow...

Vivi: Zidane!

Zidane: Vivi... Eiko...

Eiko: Thank goodness, you're alive! We thought you were dead!

Zidane: Oh... I...

Vivi: We were so worried! Why did you come here all by yourself?

Zidane: What...are you doing here?

Vivi: Huh? We came to save you, of course...

Eiko: And it wasn't easy! You went off all alone!

Zidane walks very funny as if he is in bad shape.

Zidane: Leave me alone...

Eiko: Huh?

Zidane: This has nothing to do with you.

Vivi: Oh, come on!

Eiko: There he goes, being the tough guy... Look, Zidane... It's not just about you.

Vivi: Come on, Zidane... Don't be like that. Let's-

Zidane: Shut up! Just shut up, you stupid brat!

Vivi: Zidane!?

Eiko: Zidane...

The gate closes and Zidane is still in terrible shape.

Zidane: ...

Eiko: Zidane, wait up!

Vivi: You need rest, Zidane!

Zidane: Will you little twits just shut up! There are some things kids can't understand.

Suddenly, Zidane fights Amdusias. Freya and Amarant came in to assist Zidane in the fight. After defeating it...

Freya: How foolish of you to go alone.

Zidane: ...

Amarant: Damn hypocrite. Always talking about friendship, when you're nothing but a selfish loner.

Zidane: I can take care of myself.

Freya: Come back, Zidane!

Amarant: ...

In the next room...

Zidane: !?

Steiner: (thrown) Ngwah!

Quina: (thrown) Aiya!

Steiner: I will not be defeated so easily!

Quina: Now I mad! I cook you good!

Zidane: Steiner...Quina... What are you doing...

Steiner: Have at thee!!!

Quina: Taste this!!!

Steiner and Quina fights Abadon. Zidane came to assist them in the fight and they defeat Abadon. After that...

Steiner: Hmph! What an unworthy opponent!

Quina: Zidane, you no can leave us! I still want you take me place have lots good food!

Steiner: And I have not yet concluded whether or not you are the right man for Her Highness, mind you!

Zidane: Just...leave me alone. I don't want to trouble you anymore.

Steiner and Quina: ...

In the next room...

Zidane: You're all a bunch of babysitting bastards! But trust me, I know that I'm the worst bastard here.

Zidane fights Shell Dragon. Zidane immediately got injured in the battle. Then suddenly, Zidane was cured by Dagger and they team up to defeat Shell Dragon. After that...

Zidane: Dagger...

Dagger: You try to do everything by yourself, don't you?

Zidane: Try to understand... I don't want to cause any trouble to anyone.

Dagger: Aren't we your friends!?

Zidane: I want to think so! That's why I always... Look, I'm not from Gaia. I was just a hairbreadth from becoming the destroyer of Alexandria! I can't accept your friendship so easily!

Dagger: You've always protected us. But you still don't understand that we looked out for you, too! We watched your back while you watched ours. And we believed in you the same way you believed in us! Just like you protected us... We want to protect you.

Zidane: Dagger...

Quina: You say it! My master tell me, somebody give you tasties, you give them tasties, too. Is good manners! I still not cook you succulent frog yet, Zidane.

Zidane: Quina...

Steiner: Chivalry requires a knight to look after his comrades-in-arms. I will not abandon you! And I shall follow you to kingdom come if I must. You remember that!

Zidane: Steiner... Ha.. What am I gonna do with you guys?

Steiner: The feeling is mutual!

Dagger: Alright, let's go! Wait... Where are the four others?

Zidane: Don't you think they've been trapped?

Quina: It possible...

Steiner: You should not have left them!

Dagger: That's right! I mean, really...

Zidane: Aww... I'm sorry. Let's head back... Together, this time!

Zidane's group heads back to the area where four other friends are there.

Freya: !?

Vivi: Zidane!

Eiko: Zidane! Why did you leave us!?

Zidane: I'm sorry... You were right... I need everyone's help.

Vivi: Don't leave us again, okay?

Zidane: Never...

Freya: So, you've had a change of heart.

Amarant: What a busy guy, coming and going all the time...

Zidane: Yeah, but not anymore. We have to stop Garland...

Eiko: Oh yeah, that's right! A moogle followed me all the way from Bran Bal!

Moogle: Just tell me if you need to rest, kupo!

Zidane: Alright! Now we can work our way out of this depressing castle!

Vivi: 'Cause we're all together now!

Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Eiko for his group. Zidane's group

makes the long way to Garland. In that area...

Garland: There's the observatory... You told me you'd become my angel of death... But think for a moment... Isn't life death itself? It must kill other life-forms to survive... Sometimes it even kills those with whom it shares blood... To live is to give life meaning, yet one must take others' lives to survive... A mature civilization becomes aware of this paradox... Terra's souls will sleep until they forget such nonsense. They will begin a new life in a new dimension. It's a world in which life and death become one... That is the dimension in which we are meant to live, as beings that transcend life and death! Zidane... I'll ask you one more time. Who are you!?

Zidane: You're a sad man, Garland... We know more than you... We're not perfect, but we have friends who help us. That is reason enough for us to live!

Eiko: We live to protect the ones we love!

Steiner: I may not know who I am, but that is my question alone to answer!

Dagger: We may be weak, but that's what makes us work together and help one another!

Garland: ...Then show me! Lecture me again when you are on the verge of death!

The Silver Dragon came down. Zidane's group fights Silver Dragon. After defeating it...

Zidane: Garland, tell me... What is it that you want to accomplish?

Garland: The restoration of Terra! Isn't it obvious!?

Zidane: No! That's what the people of Terra want. Why aren't you asleep with the rest of them?

Garland: I was created to oversee Terra... I exist to wait for a time when this world is without life or death... I am the absolute controller of this planet!

Zidane's group fights Garland.

Garland: Ugh!

After Zidane's group wins the fight...

Garland: You fight well...

Zidane: Give it up, Garland!

Suddenly, red lights emit from Garland.

Garland: !?

Zidane: What the-

We watch a movie of the view of the Invincible. Inside the Invincible...

Kuja: Hahahahaha! This is too easy! The Invincible is mine! Now, I have the power to control all souls! Garland gave me everything without a fight. The old fool was too busy dealing with him. Now, only death awaits him. Poor Garland... Bitten by his own dog... This is no accident. Fate has chosen me to become new ruler of Terra! Time for me to put on the finishing touches.

Kuja came out of the Invincible.

Kuja: I must say... I truly love you all. You not only broke the seal to Terra, but did me the favor of defeating Garland! Zidane... You are truly an extraordinary Genome, deserving of my love!

Zidane: What are you doing here, Kuja!?

Kuja: That's not a very nice way to greet your brother.

Zidane: Shut up! You're no brother of mine!

Kuja: (to Garland) Oh, such ferocity... Master Garland, he intends to fight Terra.

Garland: Kuja... What are you scheming?

Kuja: Scheming? Me? Watch me as I defeat these enemies of Terra! Come on, now! You may sleep alongside the souls of Terra. For all eternity!

Zidane's group fights Kuja. After the fight, Kuja transformed into Trance mode and performed Ultima on Zidane's group, injuring them.

Kuja: Yes! This is the power I've longed for!!! The mighty power of souls! They assault any threat that tries to destroy them!

Zidane: Wh-What do you mean...?

Kuja: It's Trance! You know how it works. But a normal Trance won't be enough to defeat you... You're all as resilient as oglops. Even tiny moogles possess the power of Trance... When I saw that in Gulug Volcano, I came up with a plan. It was easy. I just needed to borrow the power from wretched souls that can't die... Where did I acquire it? It was the Invincible, or should I say, that large eyeball in the sky? The ship sucked up the souls of Madain Sari, the Iifa Tree, Alexandria, to feed upon them... When it fought Bahamut at the Iifa Tree, the Invincible drew in a powerful spirit... Can you guess to whom it belonged?

Dagger: No...

Kuja: That's right! It was your mother's soul. A wretched soul that clung to life to the bitter end. The souls trapped inside the Invincible welcomed me with open arms. (to Garland) They were fed up with being your prisoners, Garland. So, master Garland. You are no longer needed. And after you've worked so hard... I shall rule Terra and Gaia with my unconditional love from now on...

Garland: What will you do with such...power?

Kuja: Master Garland... You, of all people, should accept defeat gracefully.

Kuja kicks Garland.

Garland: Gragh!

Kuja: How sad... Any last words?

Garland: Your power is...meaningless.

Kuja: ...

Kuja kicked Garland off and he fell to his death.

Garland: GRAAAHHHHHHH!!!

Kuja: Now, it's your turn... Should I kill you quickly to show my appreciation for all you've done? Or should I kill you slowly and painfully to show you my love... Oh, I've got a great idea! How's this? I'll make you pillars for my castle! You'll all decorate my castle as a symbol of my eternal kingdom... How do you like that?

Zidane: No... Never!

Garland's Spirit: You could never build an eternal kingdom...

Kuja: That voice... Garland!? Did you leave something behind?

Garland's Spirit: Do you think defect like you could last forever...?

Kuja: ...What? What do you mean!?

Garland's Spirit: I built you to last only until the worthy Genome, Zidane, grew. It was too dangerous to let you last any longer than that.

Kuja: What are you saying...?

Garland's Spirit: There's a limit on your life... You'll be dead soon... Even as I die, you'll have died without ever leaving your mark on the world...

Kuja: ... H-Ha ha ha... What an interesting lie. You're telling me that my life will end soon? Ha ha ha... Nice try, Garland, but I won't fall for your silly tricks... Garland? ... Garland!? Answer me!

Garland's Spirit: You were created to destroy. You are a mortal...

Kuja: A mortal...? ...I'm finished? I don't believe you! Why would I believe such a silly story! You're telling me that I'll die soon, now that I'm more powerful than anyone? I'm gonna...die!? Lose my soul...? Ha... HAHAHAHAAAA! What comedy! Zidane, isn't it hilarious!? I'll die just like the black mages I so despise! I single-handedly brought chaos unto Gaia, but in the end, I'm nothing but a worthless doll!

Zidane: Kuja... ...Kuja?

Kuja: ...I won't let it happen. I won't... I won't let this world exist without me!

We watch a movie of Kuja destroying Terra. The screen switches to Zidane.

Zidane: Kuja... I can't believe him...!

Vivi: Zidane! We gotta get out of here before the tower collapses!

Zidane: But how...? We need to carry the injured out, too.

Vivi: Let's steal that ship! I think Kuja called it Invincible. It's at the bottom of the tower.

Zidane: Oh yeah... But... Alright, you guys head for the ship!

Vivi: !?

Zidane: I'm gonna rescue the Genomes! They're victims. I can't just abandon them!

Dagger arrived.

Dagger: I'm coming with you!

Zidane: Dagger!?

Dagger: I don't want you to leave us again... So, I'll keep watch over you!

Zidane: ...Okay. We should be able to go back through the warp gate on the other tower! Dagger and I will head back to Bran Bal. You guys come get us on the Invincible!

Zidane and Dagger proceeds to the teleporter with the eyes.

Dagger: Looks like a teleporter leading to the upper levels... It might take us back to Bran Bal.

Zidane: (saw the eyes open) Ahhh!

Dagger: What's wrong?

Zidane: B-Behind you...

Dagger: They're just eyes. It's okay. Let's go.

Zidane: Just eyes...? How very bold of you...

Zidane approaches the teleporter where Dagger is standing.

Zidane: U-Um... Dagger?

Dagger: Yes?

Zidane: Um... About what happened earlier...

Dagger: What is it, Zidane?

Zidane: Oh, geez... I feel like I'm being watched.

Dagger: Just say it! We need to hurry.

Zidane: Um... You came to my rescue, right? And... Uh... What you said to me... It made me really happy...

Dagger: Zidane...

Zidane: How can I say this...? Um... Thanks...

The screen switches to the other friends of Zidane's.

Eiko: Hurry! Hurry! This dinky old tower is gonna collapse any minute!

Quina is moving on, but stops to talk to his/herself.

Quina: ...I no find good food on Terra. Maybe I eat eyeball over there...

Freya: Quina, hurry up, or you'll be left behind!

Quina: I happy we leave. No good food anywhere...

The screen switches to Zidane and Dagger. They are teleported to Bran Bal.

Zidane: I think we're still okay.

Dagger: Let's evacuate the Genomes!

Zidane and Dagger proceeds to Bran Bal town. In there...

Dagger: Zidane, let's split up!

Zidane: Yeah! I'll go this way! We'll meet up when the Invincible arrives!

We are now with Zidane's other friends (except Quina) and they are in the Invincible.

Eiko: My gosh... This ship is enormous!

Steiner: Judging from our current position, I believe the bridge is that way!

Freya: Hold it! Where is Quina!?

Eiko: Aaargh! Is s/he late again!?

Quina appeared from the teleporter.

Quina: Ho ho ho! I arrive! I warp inside from bottom of ship!

Vivi: Why were you underneath the ship in the first place...?

Freya: Save it for later! We must get the ship moving!

The screen switches to Zidane going down the basement and talking to the girl.

Zidane: What are you still doing here!?! We need to evacuate.

Girl: What's the point? They're only empty vessels...

Zidane: Stop talking like that! Do you really believe what you just said!?

Girl: ...Unlike the rest of them, Garland gave me a soul, that I might replace you and Kuja. But Garland is dead. Terra will soon be destroyed. What's the point?

Zidane: I asked myself the same question...

Girl: Did you find an answer?

Zidane: No... But maybe the point is to just try. It's gonna be hard...but I've got my friends. It isn't too bad.

Girl: ...

Zidane: Hey, what's your name?

Girl: Huh?

Zidane: Garland gave you a name, didn't he?

Girl: My name is...Mikoto.

Zidane: Mikoto, huh? That's a nice name... A lot of people are gonna call you that from now on. You have to find the answer yourself. It'll be hard, but you can do it. Let's go to the new world, Mikoto! There, you can find your answer...

Later outside the town entrance...

Freya: Dagger! Where is Zidane!?

Dagger: He'll be here any minute! He's looking for the last Genome...

Zidane: Sorry to keep you guys waiting!

Dagger: Zidane!

Zidane: Sorry I'm late. But now we got everyone.

Freya: Everyone on board, now! We must leave immediately!

We watch a movie of the Invincible taking off and the Invincible escapes the destruction of Terra. The Invincible is now in Gaia. In the Invincible...

Zidane: We made it...

Freya: Yes, we managed to escape from Terra, but...

Zidane: What's wrong, Freya?

Freya: Well, I was talking to Amarant about it earlier...

Amarant: You don't think this is the end, do you?

Zidane: ...Are you talking about Kuja?

Amarant: Do you think he perished with Terra?

Freya: Even with his power, it's hard to believe that he'd have escaped

unscathed...

Amarant: What do you think, Zidane? What will Kuja do next?

Zidane: ...He'll probably try to destroy Gaia...

Freya: But how?

Zidane: There was one thing Garland said... Something about a tree that serves as a gateway of souls between Gaia and Terra...

Amarant: That must be...

Zidane: Yeah... It's the Iifa Tree.

Steiner: Everyone!

Steiner runs to Zidane's area.

Steiner: You must come look! Come with me!

Zidane: What's up, Steiner? Can't you just tell us?

Steiner: It would be faster to come see it on the bridge!

In the bridge...

Zidane: What's up? They're just clouds.

Dagger: It's not just normal clouds...

Zidane: What...? Let's lower our altitude and see.

Steiner: Don't you see? Our altitude is not very high. And this is all we can see!

Zidane: Then what could it be...

Vivi: It's Mist... It's what black mages are made out of, and what used to cover the Mist Continent...

Dagger: The Mist...has covered all of Gaia...

Zidane: Why...? How? Kuja... What are you planing now!?

END OF DISC 3

The screen switches back to the Black Mage Village.

Vivi: Thanks! They were uneasy at first, but I think they'll get along fine.

Black Mage No. 288: There's no need to thank me. You've done us all a great service.

Vivi: It wasn't a big deal... Well, anyway, everything's gonna be okay!

Zidane: Are you sure it's okay for them to stay here?

Black Mage No. 288: Of course it is. So, this was Vivi's idea?

Zidane: Yeah... He wanted the Genomes to start their new lives here.

Black Mage No. 288: We're similar in many ways... Maybe we can understand them better, and they might open up to us.

Zidane: Right... He also said... If you guys can get along with the Genomes, maybe humans and black mages can live alongside each other someday...

Black Mage No. 288: Like you and Vivi...

Zidane: I didn't even know if I truly understood him until recently.

Black Mage No. 288: We'll take good care of them. Your friends are our friends.

Zidane: Thanks...

The screen switches to the Chocobo's house.

Genome: Is this a monster?

Black Mage No. 33: He's a chocobo, not a monster. He's called Bobby Corwen.

Eiko: Oh, you gave him a name!

Black Mage No. 33: Yeah. Bobby Corwen. Isn't it a great name?

Eiko: Sounds great! Bobby Corwen, huh?

Genome: !?

Black Mage No. 33: I think Bobby Corwen likes you, too.

Genome: It won't bite?

Eiko: Oh, come on! He's just a little baby chocobo.

Genome: !?

The chocobo runs off with the Genome.

Black Mage No. 33: Bobby Corwen! No! Come back here! Wow. I think Bobby Corwen really likes our new friend.

Eiko: Can't you call him by his first name...?

The screen switches to the Item Shop.

Genome: Why do you display these items?

Black Mage No. 163: Why...? For the customers, I think...

Genome: What are customers?

Black Mage No. 163: Well, they bring money, and they hand the money over to the shop, and then...

Genome: What is money?

Black Mage No. 163: Money is, uh...

Quina: Why you care about small things? World very simple place. World only have two things: Things you can eat and things you no can eat.

Black Mage No. 163:

The screen moves to the outside of the inn.

Genome: Does the water here ever stay still?

Black Mage No. 87: ...? Water flows, doesn't it?

Genome: The water of Bran Bal was always still...

Black Mage No. 87: Hey, did you know that time flows, just like water?

Genome: So, water and time both flow in Gaia...?

Amarant:

Freya: Looks like they're off to a good start.

Amarant: Hmph... It's like watching kids play.

Freya: It's not their fault... They've only just begun to live their lives...

Amarant: ...Can lost time be recovered?

Freya: I don't know... But there's only one thing we can do.

Amarant: Of course.

Freya: We must protect them from anyone who tries to take their time away from them!

The screen switches to Steiner and Dagger.

Steiner: Princess, is this what you really wish?

Dagger: Hmm? What are you talking about?

Steiner: Kuja must have done something in the Iifa Tree to cover the world in Mist... Do you not think it wise to consult Regent Cid before the final battle?

Dagger: Kuja probably plans on destroying Gaia. If I go to Lindblum now and tell the regent about it, it might cause a panic. I'm sure everyone is apprehensive about the reappearance of the Mist... I need Uncle Cid to protect Lindblum right now.

Steiner: Indeed. We must defeat the enemy on our own... Even if we go to Lindblum to get equipped, please don't tell Uncle Cid about our plans.

Zidane: Are we ready?

Dagger: Yes. Let's go.

Mikoto: You haven't got a chance. You saw Kuja's power. He destroyed a world by himself... You don't even have a million in one chance of defeating him... You'll all die.

Dagger:

Black Mage No. 24: Wow! This girl knows lots of difficult words!

Zidane: Doesn't she? She's a bit cynical, but take good care of her, will ya? Her name is Mikoto. She's kinda like my little sister.

Mikoto: Wha-

Zidane: Mikoto! Listen to you big brother and make some friends!

Mikoto: H-How silly!

Zidane: We might be desperate insects to Kuja, but I'll show you how powerful we can be.

Steiner: 'Even a fly lives for a day'!

Dagger: I don't think that's what Zidane meant...

Zidane: Let's go to the Iifa Tree! We won't let Kuja have his way!

Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Eiko for his group. Zidane's group takes the Invincible to the giant ball of destruction located on top of the Iifa Tree. We watch movie of the Invincible approaching the ball of destruction. Then a bunch of flying dragons came out of the ball of destruction.

Zidane: They're coming! !?

We watch another movie of the other airships assisting the battle and they fire away at the dragons. The screen switches to the Hilda Garde 3 airship.

Regent Cid: All ships, clear a path for the Invincible!

Baku: Can't let you guys steal the show by yourselves!

The screen switches to the Invincible.

Zidane: !

Dagger: Uncle Cid!? Why...? How did he know to show up here?

Zidane: Probably because of Baku... He loves big showdowns! Now, let's lose those dragons!

We watch a movie of the Invincible approaching closer to the ball of destruction. The screen switches to the Red Rose airship.

Kohel, Pluto Knight III: General Beatrix! Our ship is going to burst!

Beatrix: Do not fret! Your captain is about to enter Valhalla! You are a Pluto Knight! Now, act like one!

Blutzen, Pluto Knight II: ...We all know you came along because you were worried sick about Captain Steiner...

Beatrix: Did you say something!?

The screen switches back to the Invincible.

Steiner: Red Rose!? Could it be...Beatrix!?

Zidane: Quite a woman, you fell in love with!

Steiner: You're one to talk!

Dagger: Wait a minute, Steiner! What did you mean by that!?

Zidane: ...Alright! Let's bust through!

Zidane moves the Invincible forward. We watch a movie of the Invincible going through the ball of destruction. Zidane's group fights Nova Dragon. After Zidane's group defeats it, everyone went to the teleporter.

Zidane: Are you sure this will work, Quina?

Quina: Is no problem! I warp from outside before.

Zidane: I guess this is the only exit, anyway...

Quina: The same magic field outside when we come back. I warp in when I step into magic field outside.

Zidane: Alright... I guess it's no use worrying.

Zidane and Quina teleported to a strange place. In there...

Zidane: ...What is this place? !?

Vivi: What's wrong, Zidane?

Zidane: Did someone just call my name?

Dagger: No.

Zidane: That's weird...

Freya: Maybe you're just hearing things.

Zidane: I don't think so. !!!? You hear that!?

Steiner: ...I hear nothing.

Voice of Garland: ...Zidane, can you hear me?

Zidane: Garland!?

Voice of Garland: ...I am speaking only to you.

Zidane: Garland, what is this place?

Voice of Garland: Memoria... A place of memories.

Zidane: Memories...?

Voice of Garland: Yes, your memories brought forth this place... Here, you shall witness the entire truth. You have no choice. Now, go...

Zidane: What are you talking about!? Damn...!

Eiko: ...Zidane, what's going on?

Zidane: You all heard me talking, right? ...Looks like I was the only one who heard him. I was just talking to Garland. He told me that our memories created this place. I don't know what the hell he's talking about... I guess we'll just have to move forward.

Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Eiko for his group. Zidane's group moves forward in Memoria. Zidane's group arrived at the area with the destroyed Alexandria Castle.

Eiko: Isn't this...Alexandria?

Dagger: What is Alexandria Castle doing here?

Zidane, Dagger, and Eiko: !!!

Zidane's group saw the flashback of the destruction of Alexandria Castle.

Zidane, Dagger, and Eiko: !!!

Quina: What!? What are you talking about!? I not see anything!

Zidane: Of course you can't see anything. You weren't with us at the time, so it's not in your memory.

Voice of Garland: In his bid to defy me, Kuja tried to acquire Alexander... A incident, 10 years ago, started everything...

Zidane's group moves on. In the rainy area...

Zidane: A storm?

Zidane then saw two people going to the boat.

Zidane: Hey! What are you doing!? You shouldn't go anywhere. There's a storm. Watch out! You're gonna get washed away! Dagger! I just saw a little girl on a ship, and-Huh!?

The two people disappeared.

Zidane: ...I guess it was my imagination. Yeah, it had to be. What I just saw definitely isn't one of my memories.

Dagger: (What's going on? That was my memory.) (Why was Zidane able to see it?) Zidane.

Zidane: Yeah, what's up?

Dagger: ...You didn't imagine anything.

Zidane: Wait, you saw it, too...!? That means that little girl was you.

Dagger nodded "yes."

Zidane: But...why was I able to see something from your memory?

Dagger: I don't know...

Zidane: Hey, Garland! What's going on!? Garland, can you hear me!?

Voice of Garland: I feared Gaia's eidolons more than anything... However, I decided to deal with them before they became a major problem.

Zidane's group moves on. In the area with the eye...

Zidane: What is that thing...?

Dagger: That eye... It's the same eye I saw on the night of the storm at sea.

Voice of Garland: ...Zidane, can you hear me? ...Zidane. What you just saw was from your memory, and not Garnet's.

Zidane: What!? I don't remember ever being in a storm at sea.

Voice of Garland: You still don't understand... You will find out soon enough...

Zidane: What do you mean? Can other people's memories become a part of my own? Garland!!!

Voice of Garland: Once you accept everything, the answer will appear before you. A tremendous force was summoned to Gaia during the age of war... However, the Gaians were not ready to harness so great a power... They were terrified and broke the jewel into 4 pieces...and they prayed never to see it again.

Zidane's group moves on. In the are with the planets colliding...

Zidane: What is this...? Two moons colliding...? No. They look more like planets. Why does this looks so familiar...?

Voice of Garland: That is a picture of Gaia being assimilated by Terra. Five thousand years ago, Terra, already an old planet, sought to assimilate Gaia. Terra needed to merge with a younger planet to survive. However, there was already life on Gaia. And so, the story begin...

Zidane: Oh yeah. I saw this in Oeilvert.

Voice of Garland: Life on Terra was coming to an end... We had no choice but to proceed with the fusion, which tragically destroyed Terra's native civilizations. Terra was too old to assimilate everything. Thus, I created the Iifa Tree to regulate the flow of souls back to Terra.

Zidane's group moves on. In the watery area...

Quina: Wow! We in ocean now! Fish everywhere! Yum, yum!

Zidane: ...What are you doing?

Quina: Swimming after fish. Zidane, you help catch fish, too. Ugh... What this? Hard to breathe now. UGHHH! CAN'T BREATHE!!!

Zidane: That's because you think we're inside an ocean. I can breathe fine.

Quina: ...We not in ocean? You right! I breathe okay now! Fish all gone. I sad...

Zidane's group moves on. In the next area...

Zidane: So, Gaia used to be just one big ocean...

Eiko: How do you know?

Zidane: ...I don't know. For some reason, it's in my memory. I wasn't even born at the time. It doesn't make any sense... And I was born on Terra, not Gaia, so how can it be in my memory...?

Vivi: ...It's in my memory, too. Gaia used to be covered with water.

Freya: I'm getting a similar feeling as well.

Zidane: (...Maybe that means all existence can be traced back to a single source.) (I don't understand...)

Zidane's group moves on. In the are with the big fireball...

Zidane: Geez... That's one big fireball.

Steiner: Could it be a moon...?

Voice of Garland: This is the birth of Gaia.

Zidane; That's Gaia...?

Voice of Garland: Over 5,000 years ago...

Zidane: What's above that ladder?

Voice of Garland: See for yourself. Terra reached the peak of its prosperity at this time. The people believed that their future was secure. Ultimately, that very hubris led to Terra's demise. Thus, I was created to deal with our plights...

Zidane's group makes their way to the space area. Zidane's group was going through the doorway.

Zidane: (thought he would fall off space) WHOOOA! There's nothing... Is this it? Is there nothing else?

Voice of Garland: This is space.

Zidane: Space...?

Voice of Garland: Your journey is not over. Do not fear. Step forward, and you will be closer to the truth. Go, Zidane...

Zidane: That's easy for you to say.

Zidane's group moves forward in space. They reached the teleporter...

Voice of Garland: You have entered a new realm. There are no more words. There is no more space... Follow your memory, and march forth...

Zidane: Garland, what exactly is our memory!?

Voice of Garland:

Zidane: Why can I remember other people's experiences and events that happened before my time?

Voice of Garland:

Zidane: Garland, please! Tell me!

Voice of Garland: ...Do not limit memory to just one individual's experiences from birth. That is only the surface. Every life born into this world, whether natural or artificial, requires a parent. And that parent also requires a parent. Life is connected, one to another... If you trace the root of all life, there exists one source. The same can be said for memory. All life constitutes an intelligence that holds memory beyond experience. Memory is not isolated within individuals. It is an accumulation of generations of memories that continues to evolve. You can say that memory and evolution go hand in hand. But most life-forms do not understand the true nature of memories... ..which explains why most memories never cross paths.

Zidane: ...So, what am I gonna find by tracing back our roots?

Voice of Garland: ...A presence that presides over all life and memories. The crystal...

Zidane: Crystal...

Voice of Garland: You are on your own now. Zidane...take care of Kuja. ...and protect the crystal. Farewell...

Zidane: Garland, wait! Garland!!!

Voice of Garland: Even if I were created to serve one purpose alone, I do not regret being born to this world.

Zidane's group made it to the crystal place.

Zidane: Is this the crystal that Garland was talking about...? ...It's time for us to find out the truth.

Zidane's group moves on. They finally found Kuja.

Zidane: !!! Kuja!

Kuja: Nice of you to come. I'm surprised you beat the 4 Chaoses that I create from the crystal's memory. But...you're too late. Take a look. Isn't it beautiful? It's the original crystal... This is where it all began... The birthplace of all things... Once I destroy it, everything will be gone. Gaia, Terra, the universe, everything... Your lives and memories, too, of course. HA-HA-HA-HA-HA-HA-HA!

Zidane: Shut up! The only thing that's gonna be gone is you! I'll take you out right now!

Kuja: Hmph. You honestly think you can beat me? Even if you do, Gaia's already doomed. Its assimilation by Terra has begun, and the Iifa Tree will incite a cataclysmic destruction of Gaia. It's all over for you and your friends. See. I win, either way.

Zidane: It doesn't matter! Even if Gaia is assimilated, the planet will remain. And we'll start over to make a new home. Kuja, you're nothing but a coward! If you're gonna die, leave us out of it!

Kuja: Why should the world exist without me? That wouldn't be fair. If I die, we all die! Zidane, you will be my first sacrifice.

Zidane's group fights Deathguise. After defeating it...

Kuja: I can't believe you beat Deathguise... Well... My time is almost up. Time to die, everyone!

Zidane's group fights Trance Kuja. Kuja is beaten and he performs Ultima on Zidane's group and they are badly injured.

Zidane: U-Ugh... What happened to the crystal...? ...Where is this?

Unknown Voice: You stand before the final dimension, and I am the darkness of eternity...

Zidane: Wh-Who are you!?

Unknown Voice: All life bears death from birth. Life fears death, but lives only to die. It starts with anxiety. Anxiety becomes fear. Fear leads to anger...anger leads to hate...hate leads to suffering... The only cure for this fear is total destruction. Kuja was a victim of his own fear. He concluded he could only save himself by destroying the origin of all things—the crystal.

Zidane: What the heck are you talking about? Why are you telling me this?

Unknown Voice: ...Now, the theory is undeniable. Kuja's action proves it. All things live to perish. At last, life has uncovered this truth. Now, it is time to end this world.

Zidane: Wh-What do you mean by that!?

Unknown Voice: I exist for one purpose... To return everything back to the zero world, where there is no life and no crystal to give life. In a world of nothing, fear does not exist. This is the world that all life desires.

Zidane: Who the hell do you think you are!?! You're not ending anything! Never, as long as we have the will to live!

Unknown Voice: Foolish creature... Your fears have already deluded you. One day, you will choose destruction over existence, as Kuja did. When he sought to destroy the crystal, the purpose of life ended. Now, come... Enter the zero world that you desire.

Zidane: No! We'll destroy you and prove you wrong! And through our

memories, future generations will see that we can overcome any fear!
...We can't give up now. ...We have to fight together. Even if we lose, it
doesn't matter... Our memories will live on inside others. So, even if we
are born to die, I'm not afraid. I'm gonna live!

Zidane chose Steiner, Dagger, and Eiko to fight.

Quina: Come back after you kill bad guy. I prepare big meal for
everyone.

Quina sacrifice his/her power to Steiner.

Amarant: ...Don't screw up.

Amarant sacrifice his power to Dagger.

Freya: I leave everything in your hands.

Freya sacrificed her power to Eiko.

Vivi: I'm sorry I couldn't do anything. Good luck.

Vivi sacrificed his power to Zidane. After that...

Zidane: We've come too far to lose now. Let's just wrap this up and go
home...all of us.

Zidane's group's last fight is against Necron. After Zidane's group
wins the fight, they are teleported out of Memoria. Necron starts to
crumble.

Necron: This is not the end. I am eternal... ...as long as there is life
and death...

Necron is defeated. We watch a movie of Iifa Tree reacting violently.
Zidane's group got teleported to the outside of the Iifa Tree.

Zidane: Are you alright?

Dagger: Yeah...but look at what's happening.

Zidane: So, what Kuja said was true... Then Iifa Tree is beginning its
violent reaction.

Dagger: What's gonna happen?

Zidane: I don't know, but it doesn't look good...

The screen switches to the Red Rose.

Beatrix: ...I doubt anyone could've survived that explosion...

Knight 1: Nooo...

Knight 2: Captain...

Mikoto: ...They are still alive.

Beatrix: What!? Where are they?

Mikoto: ...Over there.

Beatrix: The Hilda Garde is probably closer... You the tall one.

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Sir! Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII, ma'am!

Beatrix: I didn't ask for your name. Contact the Hilda Garde right away.

Haagen, Pluto Knight VIII: Yes, sir, ma'am, sir!

The screen switches to the Hilda Garde 3.

Regent Cid: Please be alive...

Erin: Sire! We're receiving a transmission from the Red Rose!

Regent Cid: Punch it up on the main line!

Mikoto: This is Red Rose.

Regent Cid: You're not General Beatrix. Who are you?

Mikoto: My name is Mikoto. Everyone is alive. You are very close to them.

Regent Cid: What!!!? How do you know?

Mikoto: I can hear him...

Regent Cid: Who? (to the crew members) Prepare to land immediately!

We watch a movie of Hilda Garde 3 coming down to pick up Zidane's group.

Zidane: That's the Hilda Garde 3... Looks like Cid came to rescue us. Cid!

Regent Cid: Thank heavens you're all safe! Come quickly! We don't have much time!

Everybody hops aboard. Suddenly...

Voice of Kuja: ...Farewell, Zidane...

Zidane: Ah, dammit...

Dagger: What's wrong?

Zidane: ...Why don't you go on ahead? I'll catch up with you all later. I have to take care of something...

Dagger: What...!?

Zidane: ...He's still alive.

Dagger: He can't be...

Everyone came back to Zidane.

Steiner: Zidane! What are you doing!?

Zidane: Steiner... Take care of Dagger.

Steiner: What!? Wh-What do you mean by that!?

Zidane: ...Kuja's still alive. I can't just leave him.

Steiner: This is ludicrous. Just because you two are from the same planet doesn't mean-

Zidane: No, that's not the reason.

Eiko: Come on, Zidane! Why are you doing this!?

Zidane: Because... Because I might've done the same thing if I were in his shoes. I probably would've fought against you guys and wreaked havoc in Gaia like he did... I know it sounds crazy... ..but I know, deep down inside, I have to do this.

Quina: You not crazy, Zidane. But you help Kuja not good idea. Is too dangerous.

Zidane: ...I can't just leave him. There's no way I could live with myself. I'm going.

Steiner: You're making a big mistake!

Zidane: Maybe... But we all have to make big decisions in life sometimes. For me, now's that time. I have to face up to it, just like Vivi did when he confronted his fears to find out about himself. That was a big decision for Vivi.

Vivi: I don't know about that... I don't think it was really a big deal.

Zidane: That's what you think, but I might not be doing this if it weren't for you. You've definitely taught me to take life more seriously.

Freya: Well, you're obviously not going to change your mind, so I'm coming with you.

Steiner: The principle of knighthood requires that one assist his comrades in times of need. I shall accompany you as well!

Zidane: Whoa, wait a minute. Like I said, it's my moment, so don't butt in. You guys'll have your own someday. Besides, you guys have more important things to worry about, like Burmecia and Alexandria.

Freya: For once in your life, why can't you be honest!?

Zidane: Sorry, but I can't-

Amarant: 'I can't just walk away. It goes against my nature.'

Zidane: !?

Amarant: You're a real simpleton. Forget it, guys. There's no stopping this fool.

Regent Cid: What are you still doing out here!? Get onboard right now!

Amarant: Come on. Let's just leave him and get outta here.

Amarant left.

Zidane: ...That guy will never change. Alright, you heard the man! Get out of here before it's too late!

Eiko: Zidane, I love you! You'd better come back!!!

Eiko left.

Quina: Zidane, I need eat more different food. I still hungry!!! You need come back, take me more places, show me more food!

Quina left.

Freya: I still can't believe you're doing this. You've changed, Zidane. 'Til we meet again.

Freya left.

Vivi: Zidane, you've taught me another big lesson in life. Thanks...

Vivi left.

Dagger: Zidane...

Steiner: Princess... We must go.

Dagger:

Zidane: Dagger-I mean, Your Highness. The abduction is over. I can't take you any further. ...I'm sorry for being so selfish.

Dagger: No... You're not being selfish. ...You've done so much for us. If it weren't for you, I probably would've led a meaningless life. With you, I was able to see so much of the world and meet so many people. We faced many hardships, too...but...I think I finally know what's important. I'm so fortunate to have met you. I'll never forget our trip together. Thank you, Zidane. Promise me one thing... Please come back.

Steiner and Dagger got on the airship. We watch a movie of the Hilda Garde 3 taking off, leaving Zidane behind. Meanwhile...

Zidane: Kuja! Can you hear me!? I'm coming to get you!

Voice of Kuja: You still have time... Forget about me and go.

Zidane: Just shut up, and stay where you are!

Voice of Kuja: ...I don't understand you.

Zidane: Okay, here goes nothing.

We watch a movie of Zidane rushing his way into Iifa Tree while branch. Zidane fell all the way inside. After landing...

Zidane: U...Ugh... ...? Phew... Still alive... I guess that was pretty crazy.

Zidane climbs up to where Kuja is laying down.

Zidane: Hey! Are you alright?

Kuja: Zidane...? What are you doing here? In thought I told you to go...

Zidane: Wouldn't you do the same for me if you knew I was dying?

Kuja:

Zidane:Never mind.

Kuja; Your comrades were able to escape?

Zidane: Yea... I knew you had something to do with it.

Kuja: ...I'm glad they made it.

Zidane: Yeah, well...it's our turn to get movin'.

Kuja: I don't deserve to live after all that I've done. I'm useless to this world.

Zidane: No one's useless... You helped us escape, remember?

Kuja: After you guys beat me, I had nothing left...nothing more to lose. Then, I finally realized what it means to live... I guess I was too late.

Zidane: !!!! Hey! Don't you go dying on me, alright!? !!!!

We watch a movie of the branches trapping Zidane and Kuja. Meanwhile, we listen to Mikoto.

Voice of Mikoto: Kuja... What you did was wrong... But you gave us one thing... Hope... We were all created for the wrong reason, but you alone defied our fate. We do not want to forget this. We want your memory to live on forever... ..to remind us that we were not created for the wrong reason-that our life has meaning.

Some time later, the screen switches to the family of Vivi.

Vivi's Son: So, this is Alexandria...

Puck ran into Vivi's son and Vivi's son dropped the tickets.

Vivi's Son: Pick up the pace, will ya!?

Puck: I don't believe it! Vivi!

Vivi's Son: Vivi? How do you know that name!?

Puck: What are you talking about? It's me, Puck! How could you forget me!?

Vivi's Son: Puck...? You know, Puck! Th-The Prince of Burmecia!?

Puck: Oh, come on! What's wrong with you? If you're not Vivi, then who are you!?

Vivi's Son: I'm... Vivi's son!

Puck: Yeeeeow!

There are bunch of Black Mages that looks like Vivi.

Puck: Look at all the Vivis!

Voice of Mikoto: I always talked about you, Zidane. How you were a very special person to us, because you taught us all how important life is.

The screen switches to Burmecia.

Fratley: Freya, you're leaving soon, are you not?

Freya: Yes. I can hardly wait to see everyone.

Fratley: Alexandria... I went there many years ago. How long will it take to rebuild Burmecia...?

Freya: I don't care, as long as I am with you.

Fratley: ...I love you, Freya.

Freya: (...Yet he still doesn't remember our past.) I just want to cherish our time right now.

Voice of Mikoto: You taught me that life doesn't last forever. That's why we have to help each other and live life to the fullest.

The screen switches to Dagger's room.

Beatrice: It's time to say goodbye to this room... Save the Queen, you have served me well...

Beatrice placed the sword down the table.

Beatrice: My duty is finished here. Farewell, Alexandria...

Voice of Mikoto: Even if you say goodbye, you'll always be in our hearts. So, I know we're not alone anymore.

The screen switches to Amarant.

Lani: ...Hey. Why are you going to Alexandria?

Amarant: You're not going?

Lani: I-I never said that! H-Hey, wait!

Voice of Mikoto: Why I was born... How I wanted to live... Thanks for giving me time to think.

The screen switches to the kitchen of Alexandria Castle.

Quina: Good food not only delicious! Good food made with heart! This very important when cooking for friends!

Voice of Mikoto: To keep doing what you set your heart on... It's a very

hard thing to do. We were all so courageous...

The screen switches to Lindblum Castle where Regent Cid, Hilda, and Eiko are riding the elevator down.

Eiko: Hurry! Hurry! We gotta get there before the play begins!

Regent Cid: Ha ha... There's no need to hurry. The theater ship is no match for my new ship. My new Hilda Garde is the fastest ship ever!

Eiko: Do I have to remind you? You said the same thing about the theater ship! ...Ahem! That's what you said, Father!

Regent Cid: Eiko... What did you just call me?

Hilda: Darling, she called you 'Father'...

Eiko: Father! Mother! Hurry!

Regent Cid: S-Say it again, Eiko!

Voice of Mikoto: What to do when I felt lonely... That was the only thing you couldn't teach me. But we need to figure out the answer for ourselves...

The screen switches to the entrance of Alexandria Castle.

Steiner: Beatrix! Where are you going?

Beatrix: Please don't ask. My mind is already set.

Steiner: Wait! Listen to me! <Thump-Thump...Thump-Thump...> I, uh... I-I never wish to lose you again!!!

Beatrix: Steiner...

Steiner: Let us protect the queen together!

Voice of Mikoto: I'm so happy I met everyone... I wish we could've gone on more adventures. But I guess we all have to say goodbye someday.

The screen switches to the theater ship.

Baku: Alright, you scumbags! We're almost there! Been a long time since we saw Alexandria. Let's give 'em a show they won't forget!

Ruby: Yeehaw!

Cinna: Break a leg, people!

Voice of Mikoto: Everyone... Thank you. Farewell. My memories will be part of the sky...

The screen switches to Dagger will be referred by her real name Garnet as queen.

Dagger: The theater ship will arrive any minute. It's been so long... I can't wait to see everyone. But... It'll never be the same... I have to let go of the past... I have to move on, just like he taught me.

The performance has started and the audiences are giving Tantalus a

applause.

King Leo (Baku): Ladies and Gentlemen! Tonight's performance is a story that takes place long, long ago. Our heroine, Princess Cornelia, is torn from her lover, Marcus. She attempts to flee the castle, only to be captured by her father, King Leo. Tonight's story begins when Marcus and Cornelia decide to run away together. And now, Your Royal Majesty, Queen Garnet, Lord Steiner, Lady Beatrix... ..noble ladies and lords, and our rooftop viewers, Tantalus proudly presents 'I Want to Be Your Canary'!

The performance begins.

Cornelia (Ruby): Marcus?

Marcus in a robe came and embrace Cornelia.

Cornelia: Sweet Marcus, I fear I love thee more than I should!

Marcus: Princess... Wilt thou be happy, married to a lowly peasant such as I?

Cornelia: Prithee, call me 'princess' no more! Marcus, wilt thou truly cherish me, the king's only daughter? Or is such a desire too dear to wish for!? After the nuptials, shall I become no more than a puppet? A mindless puppet, never to laugh, never to cry? I wish to live my life under the sky. At times I shall laugh, at other times cry. For no life is more insincere than that lived as a masquerade.

Marcus: So much consideration thou hast given it! But worry not! Cast away thy trappings of royalty, and I shall swaddle thee in a gown of pure love! Never again will I part from thee! Pray, my love, make me thy canary to keep me forever in the cage of thy bosom! Let us embark on the first ship tomorrow, before dawn can tell of our elopement!

Cornelia: All my fortunes at thy foot, I lay, and I shall follow thee throughout the world!

Marcus: No cloud, no squall shall hinder us!

Marcus left.

Cornelia: O, love is the sweetest joy and the wildest woe. All I wish is to be by my sweet Marcus's side.

Blank: Fie! It shall be war again unless this marriage is stopped. Ne'er will I let their plan come to fruition. (to Cornelia) Good day to ye, Highness.

Cornelia: Good day...

Blank: Wist thee of Marcus?

Cornelia: Marcus!? What news dost thou bring?

Blank: This!

Blank punched Cornelia and takes her away. Later in the next scene, King Leo showed up.

King Leo: Where is she!? Where has mine only daughter gone!?

Blank showed up.

King Leo: Blank, good man! Hast thou seen Cornelia?

Blank: Worry not, Majesty. I shall make sure Cornelia marries Prince Schneider. Be thou at ease.

King Leo: At ease, sayest thou? How can I rest, not knowing she is safe? Could it be...thou hast betrayed me?

Blank: But my troth, sir, I betrayed none other than poor Marcus!

King Leo: Thou had the gall to betray thy dearest friend. Wouldst thou not betray me as swiftly?

Blank: Stay thy hand, I merely...

King Leo pulls his sword out and slashes Blank (it's only an act).
Blank falls to the ground.

Blank: I merely sought a lasting peace between the two kingdoms!

Blank is dead (pretending). Benero and Zenero showed up.

Zenero: The traitor is dead!

Benero: O, cruel fate!

King Leo: You two... Quickly, find Cornelia and bring her before me!

Benero: Yes, Your Majesty.

Zenero: Yes, Your Majesty.

King Leo: Wretched daughter! How dare she disobey her father's wishes!

King Leo left. Later in the next scene, Marcus showed up.

Marcus: The time for our departure is long past. Where is Cornelia?

Cinna: Marcus, the ship soon embarks! Board ye this boat alone, and peace could come to both kingdoms, as Blank so said. Speak, Marcus!

Marcus: She told me that she could not live without me. So, the sun is our enemy, too. The eastern sky grow bright. Will we not spread our wings, as yonder birds in joyous flight?

Cinna: Hark, Marcus! They cannot wait any longer! The ship departs!

Cinna left.

Marcus: Could she have betrayed me? Nay, ne'er would my love speak false. I must have faith! She shall appear if I only believe! As the sun lends me no ear, I pray instead to the twin moons! I beseech thee, wondrous moonlight, grant me my only wish!

Marcus takes the hooded suit off and it's Zidane.

Zidane: Bring my beloved Dagger to me!

We watch a final movie of Garnet running out of the castle, but Steiner and Beatrix briefly blocks her way. Then, Steiner and Beatrix opens the door in the royal way. Garnet runs out of the castle and in the crowd's area. As she continues to run, Garnet dropped her pendant. After Garnet stops for a brief moment, instead of retrieving her pendant that fell far away from her reach, Garnet ran towards Zidane and as she took off her Tiara, Garnet immediately jumped and desperately held Zidane. The camera shows Garnet shedding tears as she can she crying in joy while Zidane embraces and comforts her. As Zidane and Garnet embrace each other, Garnet pounded Zidane's chest 3 times. Zidane continues to embrace her by gently holding her back as Garnet is being comforted. All the audience cheered and applause including Zidane's friends. Steiner and Beatrix raised their sword up. Zidane and Dagger continues to embrace and comfort each other. Later, the camera switches to a black screen with the following messages from Zidane and Dagger:

Dagger: How did you survive...?

Zidane: I didn't have a choice. I had to live. I wanted to come home with you. So... I sang your song.

The camera shows Alexandria Castle in the zoom out view. The song Melodies of Life performed by Emiko Shiratori plays as the credits roll. This ends the story and the game.

THE END

4. Credits

Thanks, goes to SquareSoft for such a great game on PlayStation with some classic elements and great characters although Tetsuya Nomura was not involved with the character designs.